ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

World Journal of *Clinical Oncology*

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 576-666

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Contents

Monthly Volume 15 Number 5 May 24, 2024

EDITORIAL

MINIREVIEWS

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Retrospective Study

Observational Study

Basic Study

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

ABOUT COVER

Peer Reviewer of *World Journal of Clinical Oncology*, Serghei Covantsev, BSc, MD, Doctor, Research Scientist, General Surgeon, Surgical Oncologist, Plastic Surgeon, Department of Research and Clinical Development & Department of Emergency Surgery №76, Botkin Hospital, Moscow 125284, Russia kovantsev.s.d@gmail.com

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Clinical Oncology* (*WJCO*, *World J Clin Oncol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of oncology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online.

WJCO mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of oncology and covering a wide range of topics including art of oncology, biology of neoplasia, breast cancer, cancer prevention and control, cancer-related complications, diagnosis in oncology, gastrointestinal cancer, genetic testing for cancer, gynecologic cancer, head and neck cancer, hematologic malignancy, lung cancer, melanoma, molecular oncology, neurooncology, palliative and supportive care, pediatric oncology, surgical oncology, translational oncology, and urologic oncology.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJCO* is now abstracted and indexed in PubMed, PubMed Central, Emerging Sources Citation Index (Web of Science), Reference Citation Analysis, China Science and Technology Journal Database, and Superstar Journals Database. The 2023 Edition of Journal Citation Reports® cites the 2022 impact factor (IF) for *WJCO* as 2.8; IF without journal self cites: 2.8; 5-year IF: 3.0; Journal Citation Indicator: 0.36.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Production Editor: *Yu-Qing Zhao*; **Production Department Director:** *Xu Guo*; **Cover Editor:** *Xu Guo*.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Clinical Oncology

ISSN
ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
November 10, 2010

FREQUENCY
Monthly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Hiten RH Patel, Stephen Safe, Jian-Hua Mao, Ken H Young

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
May 24, 2024

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 576-579

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.576

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

EDITORIAL

Pembrolizumab autoimmune related diabetes: Moving forward, keep learning

Jose Angel Garcia, Diego Alcaraz, Esther Holgado, Felipe Couñago

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade B, Grade B

Novelty: Grade B, Grade B

Creativity or Innovation: Grade B, Grade B

Scientific Significance: Grade A, Grade B

P-Reviewer: Al-Hadhrami R, Oman; Mao RF, China

Received: November 30, 2023

Revised: February 25, 2024

Accepted: April 8, 2024

Published online: May 24, 2024

Jose Angel Garcia, Diego Alcaraz, Department of Medical Oncology, GenesisCare Spain-San Francisco de Asis University Hospital, Madrid 28002, Spain

Esther Holgado, Department of Chief of Medical Oncology, GenesisCare Spain-San Francisco de Asis University Hospital, Madrid 28002, Spain

Felipe Couñago, Department of Chief of Radiation Oncology, Genesiscare-San Francisco de Asis University Hospital, Madrid 28002, Spain

Felipe Couñago, Department of Chief of Radiation Oncology, GenesisCare-Vithas La Milagrosa Hospital, Madrid 28010, Spain

Corresponding author: Jose Angel Garcia, MMed, Attending Doctor, Department of Medical Oncology, GenesisCare Spain-San Francisco de Asis University Hospital, Joaquin Costa 28, Madrid 28002, Spain. jose.garcia@genesiscare.es

Abstract

Immune checkpoint inhibitors (and more specifically programmed cell death 1/programmed cell death ligand 1 inhibitors as Pembrolizumab) initiated a revolution in the field of melanoma and have now expanded to several tumor subtypes and in increasingly broader clinical contexts, including the adjuvant and neoadjuvant setting, with potentially curable patients and prolonged survival. The side effects related to these drugs include a wide spectrum of manifestations, with endocrinological adverse events being some of the most frequent. Pembrolizumab-induced type 1 diabetes mellitus is an infrequent but potentially serious and not clearly reversible side effect that possesses characteristic clinical features and has high morbidity and mortality, with a chronic impact on quality of life. The etiopathogenesis of this phenomenom needs to be further investigated and a collaborative effort through the involvement of oncologists and other medical specialists is necessary for the correct identification and management of patients at risk.

Key Words: Immune checkpoints; Pembrolizumab; Immunotherapy; Side effects; Endocrine system; Diabetes mellitus

Core Tip: Pembrolizumab-induced type 1 diabetes mellitus is a rare and potentially serious adverse event of immunotherapy, with a significant number of cases debuting abruptly and in a state of diabetic ketoacidosis without clear predisposing factors. Further research and strict follow-up by oncologists are fundamental tools for prevention and early treatment focusing on reducing the morbidity and mortality associated with this side effect.

Citation: Garcia JA, Alcaraz D, Holgado E, Couñago F. Pembrolizumab autoimmune related diabetes: Moving forward, keep learning. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 576-579
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/576.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.576

INTRODUCTION

The study published by Bhanderi *et al*[1] in 2023 presents a case report of an oncologic patient on immunotherapy who debuts in a state of rapidly developing diabetic ketoacidosis with low HbA1c levels suggestive of autoimmune diabetes mellitus 1 (DM1) with negative autoantibody studies, which differs from the clinical presentation of classic DM1. This publication suggests that the identification of patients at risk from a genotypic point of view remains unclear based on current literature, highlighting the need for future research to define prognostic biomarkers that may help in the management of these patients.

Immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI) are currently a standard in daily practice. In the last ten years we have witnessed a revolution that has changed the treatment paradigm for many solid tumors, initiated in 2011 with the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval of Ipilimumab (anti-CTLA4) and continued further with the approvals in 2014 of the anti-programmed cell death 1 (PD1)/programmed cell death ligand 1 (PDL1) drugs (Pembrolizumab, Nivolumab). Since the FDA approval in 2014 of Pembrolizumab for advanced melanoma, its use has expanded to more than 20 treatment indications in different solid tumors in 2023, consolidating its position as one of the standard treatments in monotherapy or combined with other drugs, in both disseminated and localized disease (adjuvant and/or neoadjuvant setting)[2,3]. The adverse effect profile of immunotherapy has changed the perspective established by conventional chemotherapy treatments and poses a clinical challenge. In this context endocrinological toxicities are frequent and probably underdiagnosed. Pembrolizumab-induced DM1 is a rare and potentially serious adverse event described in the literature that can have relevant consequences in terms of quality of life.

PD1 inhibitors are associated with approximately 95% of cases of ICI-induced DM1, although incidence is < 1%[4-6]. Pathogenically, it is caused by destruction of insulin-producing pancreatic beta cells, with reports suggesting a deeper and more rapid destruction than in classic DM1. It is unresponsive to corticosteroids and hardly reversible when established[7,8]. The average time to debut varies between 7-17 wk, although there are cases of late development (even months after the end of immunotherapy)[9,10]. It is important to note that 38%-70% of patients who develop this type of DM1 debut in a state of diabetic ketoacidosis with high (but lower than expected) hemoglobin A1C levels, suggesting a rapid development with a sharp drop in insulin secretion[4]. The clinical features of Pembrolizumab-induced DM1 involve acute onset of hyperglycemia, increased frequency of ketosis, rapid decline in C concentrations, and high glycemic variability consistent with the absence of residual beta-cell function[10].

It is because of the high risk of morbidity and mortality that it is important for physicians to be aware of this situation and act accordingly in an early manner[8]. In this context, the European Society for Medical Oncology recommends the monitorization of blood glucose in patients receiving (ICI)[11], while the American Society of Clinical Oncology guidelines recommend measuring it at baseline and with each treatment cycle for 12 wk, and then every 3-6 wk[12].

Since the publication of the first cases of Pembrolizumab-induced DM1 in 2015 we have witnessed a marked increase in reported cases, with > 90 in recent years[13,14]. In our opinion, the growing interest in this field and the efforts of clinicians and researchers should aim towards a stricter follow-up and a better identification of patients with immune-mediated adverse events. However, which group of patients at risk could benefit from a stricter follow-up remains unclear. The work of Magis *et al*[15] in 2018 shows us a prospective study based on the glycemic follow-up of 163 patients under anti-PD1 with a median follow-up of 5.6 months. This study shows the low incidence of this adverse effect (only three patients developed diabetes mellitus with anti-PD1 plus two additional patients in a parallel study with anti-PD1 *vs* Ipilimumab) and also evidences that, in all cases, glycemia prior to treatment was normal, reflecting that glycemia monitoring during treatment may not be sufficient to anticipate this phenomenon. This publication also suggests the potential role of human leukocyte antigen (HLA) determination given that four of the five affected patients were DRB01 03 or 04, (which are known to increase the risk of type 1 diabetes in the general population), noting the role of risk haplotyping to aid in the comprehensive follow-up of these patients. In 2019, Tsang *et al*[16] conducted a retrospective study of 538 melanoma patients treated with anti-PD1 (Pembrolizumab monotherapy and Ipilimumab-Nivolumab combination) over a 3-year period, with ten patients (1.9%) developing potentially immunotherapy-induced diabetes mellitus with Pembrolizumab (six patients) or the combination therapy (four patients). In the ten affected patients a DM1-associated autoantibody test (including anti-glutamic acid decarboxylase antibody, anti-insulin antibody, islet antigen 2 antibody and zinc transporter 8 antibody) was performed, with GADA (20%) being the only positive result in two patients. In addition, HLA typing was performed on the ten affected patients showing that three patients expressed high-risk HLA haplotypes (two patients had DRB104-DQB103:02-DQA103:01, one patient had DRB103:01-DQB102:01-

DQA105:01) , while three patients had an HLA haplotype previously associated with protection against DM1 (one had DRB107:01-DQB103:03-DQA102:01, one had DRB13:01, and one had DRB111-DQB103:01-DQA105:01). This publication concludes that the absence of autoantibodies and lack of clear association with high-risk HLA typing might suggest an entity with its own characteristics. The work of Wu *et al*[17] in 2021 is consistent with the data presented previously and again shows the genetic variability in DM1 cases associated with ICI, including a review of 200 patients of whom 10% had protective haplotypes. This suggests that the association with risk HLA haplotypes appears to be weaker than in DM1 cases and that other factors may be at play, although it appears that the presence of these protective haplotypes was associated with a delayed onset (18 *vs* 9 wk). To note, other authors (Akturk *et al*[18], Clotman *et al*[19]) have reported contradictory results regarding the role of autoimmunity and HLA typing in this under-represented population.

In light of these results and given the low incidence in the published case series, it is difficult to establish with certainty which predisposing factors and the mechanisms are involved. This makes early identification difficult considering that glycemia monitoring as an isolated tool may not be enough. These uncertainties reinforce the idea that joint and collaborative efforts are necessary to understand these mechanisms, correctly identify patients at risk and develop tools that allow for effective follow-up to be established in order to reduce the risk of serious side effects.

CONCLUSION

AntiPD1-PDL1 drugs represent a widely used treatment in oncology, with a different profile of adverse events compared to conventional chemotherapy. DM1 is a rare and potentially serious side effect, with a variable development time and different clinical presentations. The identification of patients at risk remains unclear and more collaborative research is needed due to the small number of subjects affected. According to the main clinical practice guidelines in the world, thorough surveillance by treating oncologists is necessary for early management to help reduce morbidity and mortality, as well as the participation of other medical specialists for an integral management of affected patients.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to thank Dr. Diego Alcaraz, Dr. Esther Holgado and Dr. Felipe Couñago for their collaboration and active participation in this project.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Garcia JA, Alcaraz D, Holgado E and Couñago F contributed equally to this work; Garcia JA, Alcaraz D, Holgado E and Couñago F wrote the manuscript; All authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Country/Territory of origin: Spain

ORCID number: Jose Angel Garcia 0009-0001-6496-3282; Esther Holgado 0000-0002-7008-7135; Felipe Couñago 0000-0001-7233-0234.

S-Editor: Li L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Bhanderi H**, Khalid F, Bodla ZH, Muhammad T, Du D, Meghal T. Autoimmune diabetes from pembrolizumab: A case report and review of literature. *World J Clin Oncol* 2023; **14**: 535-543 [PMID: 38059185 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v14.i11.535]
2 **Stewart J**. Keytruda FDA approval history. Jan 16, 2024. [cited 3 April 2024]. Available from: https://www.drugs.com/history/keytruda.html
3 **Merck Sharp & Dohme B**. V. Keytruda 25 mg/mL. EPAR product information. Oct 31, 2023. [cited 3 April 2024]. Available from: https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/product-information/keytruda-epar-product-information_en.pdf
4 **Wright JJ**, Powers AC, Johnson DB. Endocrine toxicities of immune checkpoint inhibitors. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2021; **17**: 389-399 [PMID: 33875857 DOI: 10.1038/s41574-021-00484-3]
5 **Quandt Z**, Young A, Anderson M. Immune checkpoint inhibitor diabetes mellitus: a novel form of autoimmune diabetes. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2020; **200**: 131-140 [PMID: 32027018 DOI: 10.1111/cei.13424]

6 **Stamatouli AM**, Quandt Z, Perdigoto AL, Clark PL, Kluger H, Weiss SA, Gettinger S, Sznol M, Young A, Rushakoff R, Lee J, Bluestone JA, Anderson M, Herold KC. Collateral Damage: Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Induced With Checkpoint Inhibitors. *Diabetes* 2018; **67**: 1471-1480 [PMID: 29937434 DOI: 10.2337/dbi18-0002]

7 **Yoneda S**, Imagawa A, Hosokawa Y, Baden MY, Kimura T, Uno S, Fukui K, Goto K, Uemura M, Eguchi H, Iwahashi H, Kozawa J, Shimomura I. T-Lymphocyte Infiltration to Islets in the Pancreas of a Patient Who Developed Type 1 Diabetes After Administration of Immune Checkpoint Inhibitors. *Diabetes Care* 2019; **42**: e116-e118 [PMID: 31076419 DOI: 10.2337/dc18-2518]

8 **Gauci ML**, Laly P, Vidal-Trecan T, Baroudjian B, Gottlieb J, Madjlessi-Ezra N, Da Meda L, Madelaine-Chambrin I, Bagot M, Basset-Seguin N, Pages C, Mourah S, Boudou P, Lebbé C, Gautier JF. Autoimmune diabetes induced by PD-1 inhibitor-retrospective analysis and pathogenesis: a case report and literature review. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2017; **66**: 1399-1410 [PMID: 28634815 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-017-2033-8]

9 **Wright JJ**, Salem JE, Johnson DB, Lebrun-Vignes B, Stamatouli A, Thomas JW, Herold KC, Moslehi J, Powers AC. Increased Reporting of Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor-Associated Diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2018; **41**: e150-e151 [PMID: 30305348 DOI: 10.2337/dc18-1465]

10 **Zand Irani A**, Almuwais A, Gibbons H. Immune checkpoint inhibitor-induced diabetes mellitus with pembrolizumab. *BMJ Case Rep* 2022; **15** [PMID: 35039353 DOI: 10.1136/bcr-2021-245846]

11 **Haanen JBAG**, Carbonnel F, Robert C, Kerr KM, Peters S, Larkin J, Jordan K; ESMO Guidelines Committee. Management of toxicities from immunotherapy: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2017; **28**: iv119-iv142 [PMID: 28881921 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdx225]

12 **Brahmer JR**, Lacchetti C, Schneider BJ, Atkins MB, Brassil KJ, Caterino JM, Chau I, Ernstoff MS, Gardner JM, Ginex P, Hallmeyer S, Holter Chakrabarty J, Leighl NB, Mammen JS, McDermott DF, Naing A, Nastoupil LJ, Phillips T, Porter LD, Puzanov I, Reichner CA, Santomasso BD, Seigel C, Spira A, Suarez-Almazor ME, Wang Y, Weber JS, Wolchok JD, Thompson JA; National Comprehensive Cancer Network. Management of Immune-Related Adverse Events in Patients Treated With Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor Therapy: American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice Guideline. *J Clin Oncol* 2018; **36**: 1714-1768 [PMID: 29442540 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.77.6385]

13 **Hughes J**, Vudattu N, Sznol M, Gettinger S, Kluger H, Lupsa B, Herold KC. Precipitation of autoimmune diabetes with anti-PD-1 immunotherapy. *Diabetes Care* 2015; **38**: e55-e57 [PMID: 25805871 DOI: 10.2337/dc14-2349]

14 **Elia G**, Ferrari SM, Galdiero MR, Ragusa F, Paparo SR, Ruffilli I, Varricchi G, Fallahi P, Antonelli A. New insight in endocrine-related adverse events associated to immune checkpoint blockade. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2020; **34**: 101370 [PMID: 31983543 DOI: 10.1016/j.beem.2019.101370]

15 **Magis Q**, Gaudy-Marqueste C, Basire A, Loundou A, Malissen N, Troin L, Monestier S, Mallet S, Hesse S, Richard MA, Valéro R, Beliard S, Grob JJ. Diabetes and Blood Glucose Disorders Under Anti-PD1. *J Immunother* 2018; **41**: 232-240 [PMID: 29481423 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0000000000000218]

16 **Tsang VHM**, McGrath RT, Clifton-Bligh RJ, Scolyer RA, Jakrot V, Guminski AD, Long GV, Menzies AM. Checkpoint Inhibitor-Associated Autoimmune Diabetes Is Distinct From Type 1 Diabetes. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2019; **104**: 5499-5506 [PMID: 31265074 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2019-00423]

17 **Wu L**, Tsang VHM, Sasson SC, Menzies AM, Carlino MS, Brown DA, Clifton-Bligh R, Gunton JE. Unravelling Checkpoint Inhibitor Associated Autoimmune Diabetes: From Bench to Bedside. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2021; **12**: 764138 [PMID: 34803927 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2021.764138]

18 **Akturk HK**, Alkanani A, Zhao Z, Yu L, Michels AW. PD-1 Inhibitor Immune-Related Adverse Events in Patients With Preexisting Endocrine Autoimmunity. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2018; **103**: 3589-3592 [PMID: 30124874 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2018-01430]

19 **Clotman K**, Janssens K, Specenier P, Weets I, De Block CEM. Programmed Cell Death-1 Inhibitor-Induced Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2018; **103**: 3144-3154 [PMID: 29955867 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2018-00728]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 580-586

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.580

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

EDITORIAL

Core needle biopsy for thyroid nodules assessment-a new horizon?

David D Dolidze, Serghei Covantsev, Grigorii M Chechenin, Natalia V Pichugina, Anastasia V Bedina, Anna Bumbu

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification
Scientific Quality: Grade B
Novelty: Grade B
Creativity or Innovation: Grade C
Scientific Significance: Grade B

P-Reviewer: Wu J, China

Received: December 3, 2023
Revised: January 29, 2024
Accepted: April 10, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

David D Dolidze, Serghei Covantsev, Department of Clinical Research and Development, Botkin Hospital, Moscow 125284, Russia

David D Dolidze, Grigorii M Chechenin, Department of Surgery, Russian Medical Academy of Continuous Professional Education, Moscow 125445, Russia

Serghei Covantsev, Emergency Surgery №76, Botkin Hospital, Moscow 125284, Russia

Grigorii M Chechenin, Department of Surgery, Botkin Hospital, Moscow 125284, Russia

Natalia V Pichugina, Department of Medical Ultrasonography, Botkin Hospital, Moscow 125284, Russia

Anastasia V Bedina, Medicine, Moscow State Medical University I.M. Sechenov, Moscow 119048, Russia

Anna Bumbu, Department of Oncology, Botkin Hospital, Moscow 125284, Russia

Corresponding author: Serghei Covantsev, BSc, MD, Doctor, Research Scientist, Staff Physician, Surgeon, Surgical Oncologist, Department of Clinical Research and Development, Botkin Hospital, 2nd Botkin Avenue 5, 125284, Moscow, Russia. kovantsev.s.d@gmail.com

Abstract

Ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration is the standard for evaluating thyroid nodules with a high safety profile and a relatively low number of non-diagnostic cytological findings. Nevertheless, this diagnostic method traditionally has its weak points. Several diagnostic categories such as Bethesda I, III and IV are not reliable for thyroid carcinoma risk assessment. Recent advancements in a core needle biopsy made it possible to use this tool as a new method for thyroid nodules evaluation. The main feature of this method is the use of thin needles (18-21G) and guns with an automatic trigger mechanism. The histological material collected with the use of a core needle biopsy is usually superior to cytological. Therefore, the core needle biopsy can be used as a complementary technique to a standard fine needle aspiration in difficult and dubious cases of thyroid neoplasia with uncertain malignant potential.

Key Words: Core-needle biopsy; Thyroid; Follicular tumor; Fine-needle aspiration; Thyroid cancer

Core Tip: Modern oncology is largely based on histopathological examination of preoperative specimens. However, decision to perform thyroid surgery is based on results of fine-needle aspiration cytology. It is considered that core-needle biopsy is an invasive procedure for an abundantly vascularized gland. Advances in technical construction of automatic and semi-automatic guns has led to the possibility of safe and efficient obtainment of thyroid histological specimens before surgery. Ultrasound-guided core-needle biopsy is now a widely implemented procedure in difficult and dubious cases of thyroid neoplasia owing to the advances in thyroid imaging. The latest advances in this field demonstrate that core-needle biopsy is a safe procedure that can decrease the number of unnecessary thyroid surgery and can provide additional information in doubtful cases.

Citation: Dolidze DD, Covantsev S, Chechenin GM, Pichugina NV, Bedina AV, Bumbu A. Core needle biopsy for thyroid nodules assessment-a new horizon? *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 580-586
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/580.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.580

INTRODUCTION

The incidence of thyroid cancer has increased significantly over the last decades in many countries. The Globocan 2020 incidence rates of thyroid cancer were 10.1 *per* 100000 women and 3.1 *per* 100000 men, while the mortality rates were 0.5 *per* 100000 women and 0.3 *per* 100000 men[1]. The rise in thyroid cancer incidence is mostly attributed to papillary thyroid carcinoma early diagnosis. However, the incidence of stage IV thyroid cancer has increased as well[2]. Of note, papillary thyroid cancer detection has risen by 240% in the last three decades[3]. Of the major histologic types, about 79%-90% are papillary thyroid carcinomas, 4%-5% are follicular thyroid carcinomas, 2%-5% are Hürthle-cell carcinomas, 2%-4% are medullary thyroid carcinomas, and 1%-2% are anaplastic thyroid carcinomas[4,5]. In iodine-deficient countries the incidence of follicular thyroid cancer can be up to 27%-28%, while papillary thyroid cancer is less frequent (47%-53%)[6,7]. In the cases of delayed diagnosis approximately 10%-15% of differentiated thyroid cancer can progress to more aggressive histological types[8].

The diagnosis of thyroid cancer is based on the Bethesda classification system, which plays the central role in interpreting cytology results[9-11]. Fine-needle aspiration has proven to be an efficient, simple and safe method for triage of patients with thyroid nodules[12]. It became the standard diagnostic tool for thyroid nodules in the late 1980s and replaced large-needle biopsy due to its high diagnostic accuracy and low complication rate[13]. However, its use in clinical practice demonstrated several weak points that require strengthening.

The rate of non-informative fine needle aspiration (FNA) is 10%-20% and up to 50% in repeated FNA. However, the FNA diagnostic accuracy depends on the skills of a medical specialist and the pathologist, who interprets the results. As was to be shown, approximately 17%-20% of FNA are classified as insufficient samples[14-16]. Cytological categories Bethesda III and IV do not provide an accurate diagnosis, since they require additional testing or surgery. Moreover, thyroid surgery complication rate is relatively high, while most cases of thyroid follicular neoplasia are benign[17,18]. Additional diagnostic tests are needed to overcome challenges in evaluating thyroid nodules[19].

In the light of these difficulties, large-needle biopsy has re-emerged as a new diagnostic method in the form or core-needle biopsy (CNB). Advanced technical construction of automatic and semi-automatic guns has led to the possibility of safe and efficient obtainment of thyroid histological specimens before surgery. CNB is now a widely implemented procedure used in difficult and suspicious cases of thyroid neoplasia with uncertain malignant potential owing to the progress in thyroid ultrasonography (USG) imaging[20].

CURRENT POSITION PAPERS AND GUIDELINES

Several documents reinforced the use of CNB on a national level. In 2013 and 2017 the Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology published "Core needle biopsy of thyroid nodules: Consensus statement and recommendations"[21,22]. In 2015 the Korean Endocrine Pathology Thyroid CNB Study Group published a positional paper "Pathology Reporting of Thyroid Core Needle Biopsy" [23]. The National Cancer Institute, American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, American College of Endocrinology, and Associazione Medici Endocrinologi proposed CNB for thyroid nodules with non-diagnostic FNA results and persistently non-diagnostic nodules[22,24,25].

PREPARATION BEFORE THE PROCEDURE

Core needle biopsy is performed under local anesthesia and there is no need for fasting before the procedure. The Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology recommends withdrawal from aspirin and clopidogrel for 7-10 d, warfarin for 3-5 d, and heparin for 4-6 h before the procedure. Initiation of aspirin and clopidogrel bisulfate after CNB is recommended on the next day after procedure followed by heparin administered 2 h later after CNB and warfarin at night[22]. There have been

studies that ultrasound-guided FNA of thyroid nodules can be safely used in patients who receive antiplatelet agents and anticoagulants without increase in adverse events or decrease in diagnostic rate[26]. Similar reports have been published for patients undergoing CNB of other organs[27]. Nevertheless, thyroid gland is a highly vascularized organ and there should be further studies to assess antiplatelet agents and anticoagulants security profile before administering them to the patients undergoing this procedure. Therefore, it seems reasonable that the Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology recommendations should be implemented.

CNB TECHNIQUE

The device for CNB should meet the parameters for the depth of needle penetration, taking into account the size of the mass. The optimal goal is maximum capture of the thyroid mass with minimal damage to the surrounding tissues. As for the thyroid gland, it is optimal to use a needle length of 6-10 cm, with an excursion of 1.5-2.2 cm. An ultrasound probe is insulated with a sterile sleeve, and sterile gel or saline are used to improve conductivity.

The procedure is performed in aseptic conditions. The neck area is disinfected with an antiseptic solution and subcutaneous tissue is infiltrated with local anesthetics. Additionally, it is possible to use non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs to reduce pain.

The thyroid gland CNB is performed under ultrasound control with an 18-21G cutting biopsy needle. The size of the needle affects the volume of material obtained; the thinner the needle, the less tissue will be obtained, but it is also related with the lower risk of trauma to the organ and lower complication rate. Therefore, in the majority of cases it is optimal to use 18 G needles. The procedure is performed by trained surgeon and a sonographer using the "free hand" method.

The needle is inserted using ultrasound navigation to the level of the thyroid gland. The needle tip is positioned so it remains on a pre-selected trajectory away from the major vessels (carotid artery and jugular vein) and trachea, and the biopsy needle firing distance is measured. After the procedure, finger pressure is applied to the biopsy area for 20-30 min. There are several ways to collect material: Biopsy of the mass formation itself, marginal biopsy of the mass with the adjacent zone of the capsule and healthy tissue, and a combination of these methods. At least two biopsies of the thyroid nodule are required (Figure 1). The obtained biological material is placed in containers with a 10% formaldehyde solution and they are marked in advance for a subsequent histological and, if necessary, immunohistochemical examination and/or molecular genetic testing.

ULTRASONOGRAPHY-GUIDANCE

The thyroid gland CNB is performed under ultrasonography control with preliminary assessment of the mass blood supply, Thyroid Imaging Reporting and Data System (TI-RADS) score, and identification of potentially malignant areas. Optimal visualization is reached using a linear probe with a frequency of 7-12 MHz. The probe is aimed perpendicular to the skin surface in the projection of the mass. The needle is inserted strictly into the area of interest on the scanning plane. Ultrasound control is carried out parallel to the inserted needle along its length with mandatory visualization of the needle tip. It is necessary that the ultrasound scanning field includes the main vessels (carotid artery and jugular vein) and the trachea in order to avoid their injury. It is possible to assess the penetration distance before firing using the Vernier caliper. After the procedure, a re-evaluation of the mass is performed. The stages of ultrasonography-guidance are presented in Figure 2.

DIAGNOSTIC ACCURACY

A recent meta-analysis that included nine eligible studies, with 2240 patients and 2245 thyroid nodules involved, demonstrated that the pooled proportion for non-diagnostic results, inconclusive results and malignancy was 1.8% (95%CI: 0.4%-3.2%), 25.1% (95%CI: 15.4%–34.9%) and 18.9% (95%CI: 8.4%–29.5%), respectively. The sensitivity of CNB varied, ranging from 44.7% to 85.0%, while the specificity was 100% in all cases[28]. Second CNB in the case of non-diagnostic results provides a definitive diagnosis in almost all cases[29].

Furthermore, as CNB has advantages over FNA in amount of tissue obtained, it is possible to perform immunohistochemistry (IHC) or molecular testing using additional paraffin-embedded tissue sections. A combination of IHC markers consisting of galectin-3, HBME-1, cytokeratin 19 and CD56 is commonly used for the diagnosis of papillary carcinoma [22]. Molecular testing based on the FNA does not always provide adequate results. Rate of false-negative BRAF mutation testing using FNA increases in cases of old age, indeterminate FNA pathology results, and certain thyroid cancer subtypes[30]. The material extracted from CNB is usually sufficient to perform IHC and genetic tests[31,32].

CNB may have its limitation in small thyroid nodules. Some studies demonstrate that superiority of CNB to FNA is found in thyroid nodules larger than 2.0 cm and classified by American College of Radiology as TI-RADS or Korean-TIRADS category 4[33]. CNB is also superior to FNA in cases of possible lymph node metastases[34].

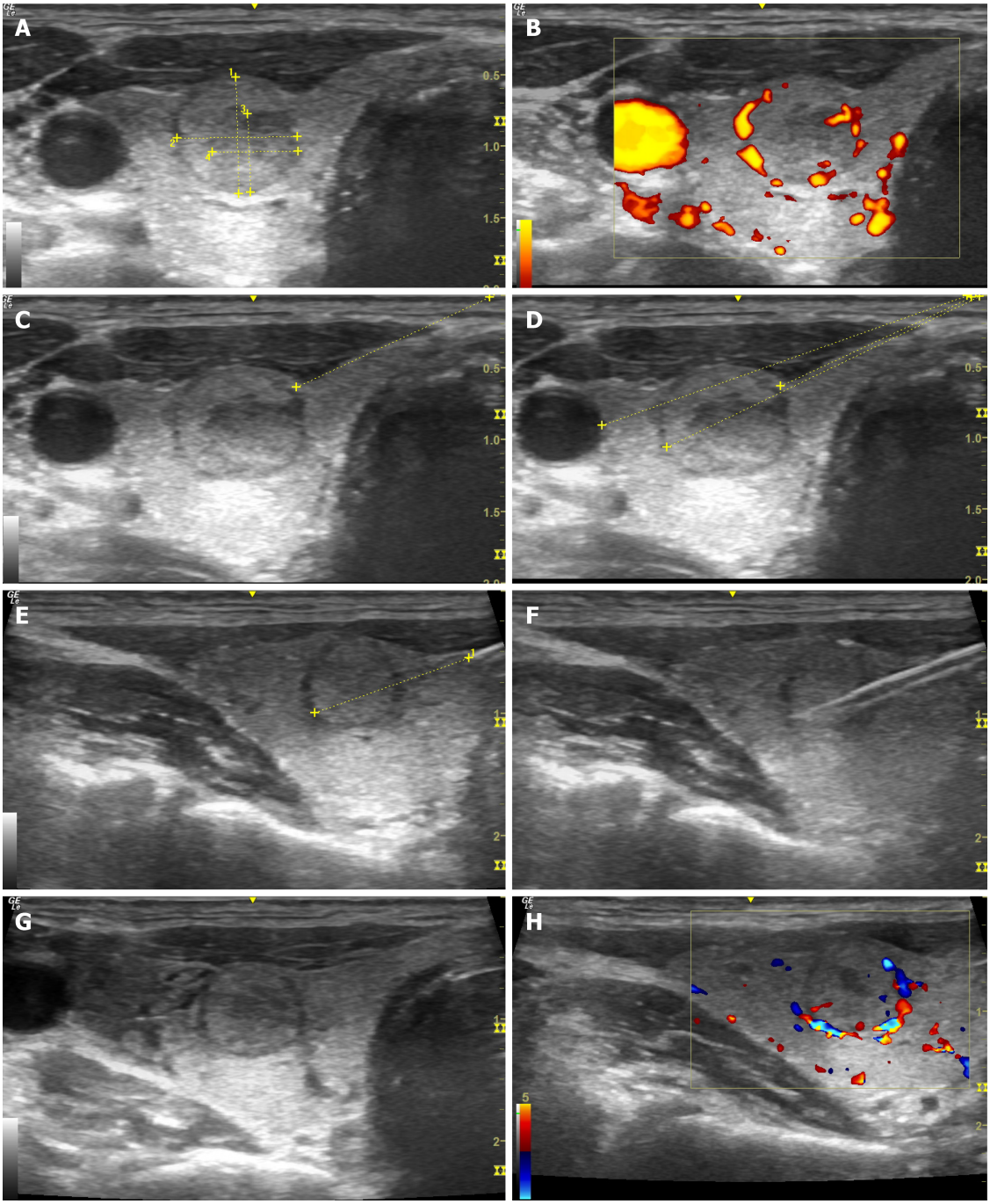


Figure 1 Ultrasonography-guided core-needle biopsy of the thyroid gland. A: Assessment of the size of the mass; B: Assessment in the Doppler mode; C: Marking the optimal trajectory for core-needle biopsy (CNB); D: Calculation of the distance till the mass and major vessels; E: Control of the needle along its length; F: Control during the biopsy; G: Assessment of the mass after CNB; H: Assessment of the node in Doppler mode after CNB.

SAFETY AND COMPLICATIONS

An analysis of 6169 patients who underwent ultrasound-guided CNB demonstrated a complication rate of 0.81% (53 complications, of which only 4 were major). The complications included hematoma, pseudoaneurysm formation, dysphonia, carotid injury, tracheal puncture, dysphagia, oedema, vertebral puncture, and vasovagal reaction[35]. Most of the reported cases of bleeding could be treated with manual pressure[36]. Another study that included 4412 CNB demonstrated that minor complications occurred in 2.2% of CNB, and major in four procedures (0.09%)[29]. As it seems, in high volume centers the complication rate is around 1%-2% and major complications are exceedingly rare.

Treatment tactics for bleeding depends primarily on the blood volume loss and airway patency. In order to assess the degree of surrounding tissues compression, the most optimal method is USG. Decompression can be employed by performing USG-guided puncture or by installing drainage into the bleeding area. In most cases, bleeding stops with conservative therapy. In the case of dyspnea aggravation, uncontrolled hemorrhage or hemodynamic instability, emergency surgical intervention is indicated. Conservative treatment should include antibacterial therapy to prevent abscess formation, and anti-inflammatory therapy to reduce swelling. If a patient condition worsens, emergency

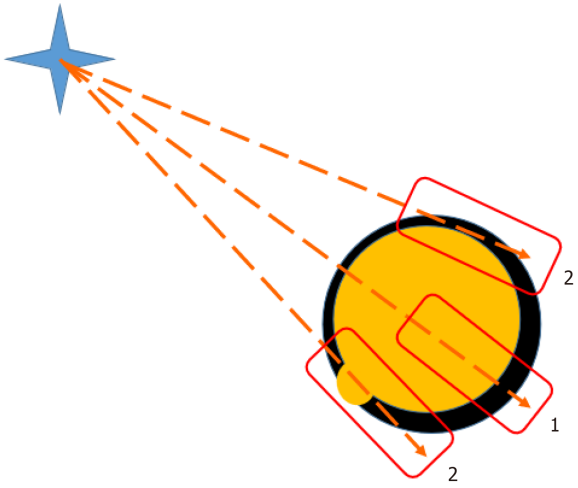


Figure 2 Core-needle biopsy of a thyroid node may be marginal 2 or through the node 1.

intubation to protect airways is indicated and surgical treatment is performed, which most often includes stopping bleeding and hemithyroidectomy[37].

The literature presents isolated cases of transient laryngeal nerve paresis after CNB biopsy of the thyroid gland. In such cases, conservative treatment methods can be used: Drug therapy (neostigmine and other drugs that increase conductivity in the nervous system), exercises with a speech therapist, vocal cord augmentation using botulinum toxin injections and surgery (laryngoplasty, reinnervation)[38].

CONCLUSION

Modern oncology is largely based on histopathological examination of preoperative specimens. Nevertheless, thyroid surgery is carried out on the basis of fine-needle aspiration cytology. It has been presumed that CNB is an invasive procedure for an abundantly vascularized gland. However, latest advances in this filed demonstrate that CNB is a safe procedure that can decrease the number of unnecessary thyroid surgical operations and can provide additional information in undetermined cases.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Covantsev S, Bumbu A designed the research study; Dolidze DD, Covantsev S, Chechenin GM, Pichugina NV, Bedina AV, and Bumbu A analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript; Dolidze DD, Covantsev S, Chechenin GM, Pichugina NV, Bedina AV, Bumbu A revised the manuscript. All authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Country/Territory of origin: Russia

ORCID number: David D Dolidze 0000-0002-0517-8540; Serghei Covantsev 0000-0001-7236-5699; Grigorii M Chechenin 0000-0002-4883-2389; Natalia V Pichugina 0000-0002-4778-0273; Anastasia V Bedina 0009-0005-5355-8651; Anna Bumbu 0009-0000-5774-8632.

S-Editor: Liu H
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Pizzato M**, Li M, Vignat J, Laversanne M, Singh D, La Vecchia C, Vaccarella S. The epidemiological landscape of thyroid cancer worldwide: GLOBOCAN estimates for incidence and mortality rates in 2020. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2022; **10**: 264-272 [PMID: 35271818 DOI:

10.1016/S2213-8587(22)00035-3]
2 **Olson E**, Wintheiser G, Wolfe KM, Droessler J, Silberstein PT. Epidemiology of Thyroid Cancer: A Review of the National Cancer Database, 2000-2013. *Cureus* 2019; **11**: e4127 [PMID: 31049276 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.4127]
3 **Davies L**, Welch HG. Increasing incidence of thyroid cancer in the United States, 1973-2002. *JAMA* 2006; **295**: 2164-2167 [PMID: 16684987 DOI: 10.1001/jama.295.18.2164]
4 **Hu J**, Yuan IJ, Mirshahidi S, Simental A, Lee SC, Yuan X. Thyroid Carcinoma: Phenotypic Features, Underlying Biology and Potential Relevance for Targeting Therapy. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 33669363 DOI: 10.3390/ijms22041950]
5 **Ries LAG**, Harkins D, Krapcho M, Mariotto A, Miller BA, Feuer EJ, Clegg L, Eisner MP, Horner MJ, Howlader N, Hayat M, Hankey BF, Edwards BK (eds). SEER Cancer Statistics Review, 1975-2003. Available from: https://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2003/
6 **Pettersson B**, Adami HO, Wilander E, Coleman MP. Trends in thyroid cancer incidence in Sweden, 1958-1981, by histopathologic type. *Int J Cancer* 1991; **48**: 28-33 [PMID: 2019455 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.2910480106]
7 **Levi F**, Franceschi S, Te VC, Negri E, La Vecchia C. Descriptive epidemiology of thyroid cancer in the Swiss Canton of Vaud. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 1990; **116**: 639-647 [PMID: 2254383 DOI: 10.1007/BF01637087]
8 **Shah JP**. Thyroid carcinoma: epidemiology, histology, and diagnosis. *Clin Adv Hematol Oncol* 2015; **13**: 3-6 [PMID: 26430868]
9 **Ali SZ**, Baloch ZW, Cochand-Priollet B, Schmitt FC, Vielh P, VanderLaan PA. The 2023 Bethesda System for Reporting Thyroid Cytopathology. *Thyroid* 2023; **33**: 1039-1044 [PMID: 37427847 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2023.0141]
10 **Cibas ES**, Ali SZ. The 2017 Bethesda System for Reporting Thyroid Cytopathology. *Thyroid* 2017; **27**: 1341-1346 [PMID: 29091573 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2017.0500]
11 **Cibas ES**, Ali SZ. The Bethesda System for Reporting Thyroid Cytopathology. *Thyroid* 2009; **19**: 1159-1165 [PMID: 19888858 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2009.0274]
12 **Sakorafas GH**. Thyroid nodules; interpretation and importance of fine-needle aspiration (FNA) for the clinician - practical considerations. *Surg Oncol* 2010; **19**: e130-e139 [PMID: 20620044 DOI: 10.1016/j.suronc.2010.06.003]
13 **Ashcraft MW**, Van Herle AJ. Management of thyroid nodules. II: Scanning techniques, thyroid suppressive therapy, and fine needle aspiration. *Head Neck Surg* 1981; **3**: 297-322 [PMID: 6163751 DOI: 10.1002/hed.2890030406]
14 **Alexander EK**, Heering JP, Benson CB, Frates MC, Doubilet PM, Cibas ES, Marqusee E. Assessment of nondiagnostic ultrasound-guided fine needle aspirations of thyroid nodules. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2002; **87**: 4924-4927 [PMID: 12414851 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2002-020865]
15 **Orija IB**, Piñeyro M, Biscotti C, Reddy SS, Hamrahian AH. Value of repeating a nondiagnostic thyroid fine-needle aspiration biopsy. *Endocr Pract* 2007; **13**: 735-742 [PMID: 18194930 DOI: 10.4158/EP.13.7.735]
16 **Theoharis CG**, Schofield KM, Hammers L, Udelsman R, Chhieng DC. The Bethesda thyroid fine-needle aspiration classification system: year 1 at an academic institution. *Thyroid* 2009; **19**: 1215-1223 [PMID: 19888859 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2009.0155]
17 **Dolidze DD**, Shabunin AV, Mumladze RB, Vardanyan AV, Covantsev SD, Shulutko AM, Semikov VI, Isaev KM, Kazaryan AM. A Narrative Review of Preventive Central Lymph Node Dissection in Patients With Papillary Thyroid Cancer - A Necessity or an Excess. *Front Oncol* 2022; **12**: 906695 [PMID: 35847927 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2022.906695]
18 **Dolidze D**, Shabunin A, Vardanyan A, Melnik K, Covantsev S. Prophylaxis of postoperative hypoparathyroidism in thyroid surgery. *Folia Med (Plovdiv)* 2023; **65**: 207-214 [PMID: 37144304 DOI: 10.3897/folmed.65.e75427]
19 **Karatay E**, Javadov M, Kaya H. Thyroid nodule core needle biopsy - current approach. *Endokrynol Pol* 2023; **74** [PMID: 37994586 DOI: 10.5603/ep.97053]
20 **Novoa E**, Gürtler N, Arnoux A, Kraft M. Role of ultrasound-guided core-needle biopsy in the assessment of head and neck lesions: a meta-analysis and systematic review of the literature. *Head Neck* 2012; **34**: 1497-1503 [PMID: 22127851 DOI: 10.1002/hed.21821]
21 **Baek JH**, Na DG, Lee JH, Jung SL, Kim JH, Sung JY. Core Needle Biopsy of Thyroid Nodules: Consensus Statement and Recommendations. *J Korean Soc Ultrasound Med* 2013; **32**: 95-102
22 **Na DG**, Baek JH, Jung SL, Kim JH, Sung JY, Kim KS, Lee JH, Shin JH, Choi YJ, Ha EJ, Lim HK, Kim SJ, Hahn SY, Lee KH, Youn I, Kim YJ, Ahn HS, Ryu JH, Baek SM, Sim JS, Jung CK; Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology (KSThR) and Korean Society of Radiology. Core Needle Biopsy of the Thyroid: 2016 Consensus Statement and Recommendations from Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology. *Korean J Radiol* 2017; **18**: 217-237 [PMID: 28096731 DOI: 10.3348/kjr.2017.18.1.217]
23 **Jung CK**, Min HS, Park HJ, Song DE, Kim JH, Park SY, Yoo H, Shin MK; Korean Endocrine Pathology Thyroid Core Needle Biopsy Study Group. Pathology Reporting of Thyroid Core Needle Biopsy: A Proposal of the Korean Endocrine Pathology Thyroid Core Needle Biopsy Study Group. *J Pathol Transl Med* 2015; **49**: 288-299 [PMID: 26081825 DOI: 10.4132/jptm.2015.06.04]
24 **Gharib H**, Papini E, Paschke R, Duick DS, Valcavi R, Hegedüs L, Vitti P; AACE/AME/ETA Task Force on Thyroid Nodules. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, Associazione Medici Endocrinologi, and EuropeanThyroid Association Medical Guidelines for Clinical Practice for the Diagnosis and Management of Thyroid Nodules. *Endocr Pract* 2010; **16** Suppl 1: 1-43 [PMID: 20497938 DOI: 10.4158/10024.GL]
25 **Gharib H**, Papini E, Garber JR, Duick DS, Harrell RM, Hegedüs L, Paschke R, Valcavi R, Vitti P; AACE/ACE/AME Task Force on Thyroid Nodules. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, American Society of Endocrinology, and American Association of Endocrinologists Medical Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Thyroid Nodules in Clinical Practice - 2016 Update. *Endocr Pract* 2016; **22**: 622-639 [PMID: 27167915 DOI: 10.4158/EP161208.GL]
26 **Khadra H**, Kholmatov R, Monlezun D, Kandil E. Do anticoagulation medications increase the risk of haematoma in ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration of thyroid lesions? *Cytopathology* 2018; **29**: 565-568 [PMID: 29969159 DOI: 10.1111/cyt.12608]
27 **Somerville P**, Seifert PJ, Destounis SV, Murphy PF, Young W. Anticoagulation and bleeding risk after core needle biopsy. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2008; **191**: 1194-1197 [PMID: 18806164 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.07.3537]
28 **Suh CH**, Baek JH, Park C, Choi YJ, Lee JH. The Role of Core Needle Biopsy for Thyroid Nodules with Initially Indeterminate Results on Previous Fine-Needle Aspiration: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2017; **38**: 1421-1426 [PMID: 28473343 DOI: 10.3174/ajnr.A5182]
29 **Paja M**, Del Cura JL, Zabala R, Korta I, Ugalde A, López JI. Core-needle biopsy in thyroid nodules: performance, accuracy, and complications. *Eur Radiol* 2019; **29**: 4889-4896 [PMID: 30783787 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-019-06038-6]
30 **Paek SH**, Kim BS, Kang KH, Kim HS. False-negative BRAF V600E mutation results on fine-needle aspiration cytology of papillary thyroid carcinoma. *World J Surg Oncol* 2017; **15**: 202 [PMID: 29132392 DOI: 10.1186/s12957-017-1266-5]
31 **Matrone A**, De Napoli L, Torregrossa L, Aghababyan A, Papini P, Ambrosini CE, Cervelli R, Ugolini C, Basolo F, Molinaro E, Elisei R,

Materazzi G. Core Needle Biopsy Can Early and Precisely Identify Large Thyroid Masses. *Front Oncol* 2022; **12**: 854755 [PMID: 35463338 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2022.854755]

32 **Jung CK**. Reevaluating diagnostic categories and associated malignancy risks in thyroid core needle biopsy. *J Pathol Transl Med* 2023; **57**: 208-216 [PMID: 37460395 DOI: 10.4132/jptm.2023.06.20]

33 **Hahn SY**, Shin JH, Oh YL, Park KW, Lim Y. Comparison Between Fine Needle Aspiration and Core Needle Biopsy for the Diagnosis of Thyroid Nodules: Effective Indications According to US Findings. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 4969 [PMID: 32188891 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-60872-z]

34 **Zhang X**, Zhang X, Du W, Dai L, Luo R, Fang Q, Ge H. Fine Needle Biopsy Versus Core Needle Biopsy Combined With/Without Thyroglobulin or BRAF 600E Mutation Assessment for Detecting Cervical Nodal Metastasis of Papillary Thyroid Carcinoma. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2021; **12**: 663720 [PMID: 33912138 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2021.663720]

35 **Ha EJ**, Baek JH, Lee JH, Kim JK, Choi YJ, Sung TY, Kim TY. Complications following US-guided core-needle biopsy for thyroid lesions: a retrospective study of 6,169 consecutive patients with 6,687 thyroid nodules. *Eur Radiol* 2017; **27**: 1186-1194 [PMID: 27311538 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-016-4461-9]

36 **Ahn HS**, Youn I, Na DG, Kim SJ, Lee MY. Diagnostic performance of core needle biopsy as a first-line diagnostic tool for thyroid nodules according to ultrasound patterns: Comparison with fine needle aspiration using propensity score matching analysis. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 2021; **94**: 494-503 [PMID: 32869866 DOI: 10.1111/cen.14321]

37 **Başak H**, Yücel L, Hasanova A, Beton S. Management of a Spontaneous Thyroid Nodule Hemorrhage Causing Acute Airway Obstruction. *Turk Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 2021; **59**: 289-291 [PMID: 35262046 DOI: 10.4274/tao.2021.2021-5-23]

38 **Lynch J**, Parameswaran R. Management of unilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury after thyroid surgery: A review. *Head Neck* 2017; **39**: 1470-1478 [PMID: 28370683 DOI: 10.1002/hed.24772]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 587-590

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.587

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

EDITORIAL

Bruton's tyrosine kinase inhibitors in primary central nervous system lymphoma: New hopes on the horizon

Leonardo S Lino-Silva, Sabrina B Martínez-Villavicencio, Luisa Fernanda Rivera-Moncada

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade C, Grade D

Novelty: Grade B, Grade C

Creativity or Innovation: Grade B, Grade C

Scientific Significance: Grade B, Grade B

P-Reviewer: Song T, China

Received: December 12, 2023

Revised: March 22, 2024

Accepted: April 17, 2024

Published online: May 24, 2024

Leonardo S Lino-Silva, Sabrina B Martínez-Villavicencio, Luisa Fernanda Rivera-Moncada, Department of Pathology Oncology, National Cancer Institute (Mexico), Tlalpan, Mexico City 14080, Mexico

Corresponding author: Leonardo S Lino-Silva, MD, MEd, PhD, Professor, Department of Department of Pathology Oncology, National Cancer Institute (Mexico), Av. San fernando 22, Sección XVI, Tlalpan, Mexico City 14080, Mexico. saul.lino.sil@gmail.com

Abstract

In this editorial, we comment on the article by Wang *et al*. This manuscript explores the potential synergistic effects of combining zanubrutinib, a novel oral inhibitor of Bruton's tyrosine kinase, with high-dose methotrexate (HD-MTX) as a therapeutic intervention for primary central nervous system lymphoma (PCNSL). The study involves a retrospective analysis of 19 PCNSL patients, highlighting clinicopathological characteristics, treatment outcomes, and genomic biomarkers. The results indicate the combination's good tolerance and strong antitumor activity, with an 84.2% overall response rate. The authors emphasize the potential of zanubrutinib to modulate key genomic features of PCNSL, particularly mutations in myeloid differentiation primary response 88 and cluster of differentiation 79B. Furthermore, the study investigates the role of circulating tumor DNA in cerebrospinal fluid for disease surveillance and treatment response monitoring. In essence, the study provides valuable insights into the potential of combining zanubrutinib with HD-MTX as a frontline therapeutic regimen for PCNSL. The findings underscore the importance of exploring alternative treatment modalities and monitoring genomic and liquid biopsy markers to optimize patient outcomes. While the findings suggest promise, the study's limitations should be considered, and further research is needed to establish the clinical relevance of this therapeutic approach for PCNSL.

Key Words: Primary central nervous system lymphoma; Zanubrutinib; Bruton's tyrosine kinase; Prognosis; Myeloid differentiation primary response 88 gene; Cluster of differentiation 79B gene

Core Tip: The combination of zanubrutinib with high-dose methotrexate shows promise as a therapeutic approach for primary central nervous system lymphoma (PCNSL). In this study involving 19 patients, the treatment demonstrated a notable 84.2% overall response rate with manageable adverse events. The presence of circulating tumor DNA in cerebrospinal fluid emerged as a potential tool for monitoring treatment response. These findings are optimistic, but research in larger patient groups is crucial to validate outcomes and assess long-term effects, especially in different molecular subtypes of PCNSL.

Citation: Lino-Silva LS, Martínez-Villavicencio SB, Rivera-Moncada LF. Bruton's tyrosine kinase inhibitors in primary central nervous system lymphoma: New hopes on the horizon. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 587-590
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/587.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.587

INTRODUCTION

In this editorial we comment on the article by Wang *et al*[1]. Primary central nervous system lymphoma (PCNSL) is a rare and aggressive subtype of non-Hodgkin lymphoma that primarily affects the central nervous system (CNS), including the brain, spinal cord, and eyes. This malignancy is distinct from systemic lymphomas as it arises and remains confined within the CNS, presenting unique diagnostic and therapeutic challenges. The majority of PCNSL cases are classified as diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), which is often associated with immunocompromised states such as individuals with human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or those undergoing immunosuppressive therapy. PCNSL comprises approximately 2%-3% of all primary brain tumors, with an increasing incidence noted in recent years, particularly among the elderly and immunocompromised populations[2]. While the precise etiology remains unclear, immunosuppression, chronic inflammation, and infections such as with the Epstein-Barr virus have been suggested as potential risk factors[3].

PCNSL typically presents with nonspecific neurological symptoms including cognitive decline, focal neurological deficits, and seizure[4]. Ocular involvement, termed primary intraocular lymphoma, may occur concurrently, adding to the complexity of diagnosis[4]. Given the lack of pathognomonic clinical features, the definitive diagnosis often requires brain biopsy, as imaging findings may overlap with other brain lesions[4]. Prognosis in PCNSL is influenced by various factors. Advanced age, immunocompromised status, deep-seated lesions, and elevated lactate dehydrogenase levels at diagnosis are associated with poorer outcomes[5]. Additionally, the blood-brain barrier poses a challenge by limiting the efficacy of systemic treatments, contributing to the overall difficulty in managing PCNSL.

The primary treatment approach for PCNSL involves a combination of high-dose methotrexate (HD-MTX)-based chemotherapy and, in some cases, radiation therapy[6]. HD-MTX, which crosses the blood-brain barrier, forms the backbone of most treatment regimens. The addition of rituximab, an anti-cluster of differentiation 20 (CD20) monoclonal antibody, to chemotherapy protocols has improved outcomes and is now commonly incorporated into treatment strategies. For eligible patients, consolidation therapies such as autologous stem cell transplantation may be considered[6]. Current research in PCNSL focuses on identifying novel therapeutic strategies to enhance treatment efficacy and reduce toxicity. Immunotherapeutic approaches, including chimeric antigen receptor T-cell therapy, are being investigated for their potential in targeting lymphoma cells within the CNS[7]. Additionally, targeted therapies, such as Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitors, are under exploration, offering promising avenues for future treatment modalities[8]. PCNSL represents a unique and challenging entity within the spectrum of lymphomas. Advances in diagnostic techniques, treatment modalities, and ongoing research are essential for improving outcomes in patients with this rare malignancy.

BTK INHIBITORS AND LYMPHOMAS

Lymphomas, a heterogeneous group of blood cancers, often exhibit dysregulated signaling pathways that contribute to their pathogenesis. One key target for therapeutic intervention in lymphomas is BTK, a crucial enzyme in B-cell receptor signaling. In recent years, the development of BTK inhibitors has shown remarkable promise in the treatment of various lymphoid malignancies.

In the realm of lymphoma therapeutics, inhibitors targeting BTK have emerged as pivotal agents, with notable contenders including ibrutinib, acalabrutinib, and zanubrutinib.

Ibrutinib, which was granted approval for the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) and mantle cell lymphoma, has substantiated its efficacy through rigorous clinical trials[9]. Meanwhile, acalabrutinib, indicated for chronic lymphocytic leukemia and mantle cell lymphoma, has garnered attention for its distinctive selectivity and potency, a topic extensively elucidated in the study by Barf *et al*[10]. On a similar note, anubrutinib, specifically designed for adult mantle cell lymphoma, has undergone scrutiny in a phase 1 trial overseen by Tam *et al*[11], shedding light on both its safety profile and clinical effectiveness. Recent investigations have extended the application of BTK inhibitors to PCNSL. Zanubrutinib, in combination with HD-MTX, has emerged as a promising therapeutic avenue for newly diagnosed PCNSL[1]. A notable aspect of these studies involves the exploration of liquid biopsy techniques, particularly the use of circulating tumor DNA (ctDNA) in cerebrospinal fluid. This innovative approach has been proposed as a potential

monitoring tool for treatment response, providing valuable insights into disease surveillance.

BTK is an intracellular tyrosine kinase (non-membrane receptor) composed of 659 amino acids, with its gene located on chromosome Xq21.33-q22. BTK belongs to the tyrosine kinase family known as TEC. The domains that make up the structure of BTK are: a pleckstrin homology domain in the N-terminal region, which facilitates binding to lipid regions of phosphatidylinositol on the plasma membrane; a Src homology 2 (SH2) domain involved in protein-protein interaction binding to phosphorylated tyrosines; an SH3 domain with binding to proline-rich regions, and a C-terminal catalytic domain.

An important point to note is that pharmacological inhibition of BTK activity not only interferes with signaling through the B-cell receptor (BCR) but also with signals from the tumor microenvironment, such as those induced by chemokines and other survival factors for leukemic cells. Thus, BTK inhibitors promote the egress of the leukemic clone from its survival niches in lymphoid tissues, directing it towards cell death.

BTK inhibitors are classified as reversible or irreversible, depending on the site of inhibition on the protein. Irreversible inhibitors covalently bind to the cysteine residue at amino acid position 481 (kinase activity site), blocking adenosine triphosphate (ATP) binding; restoration of activity requires synthesis of new protein. Reversible inhibitors bind tightly to BTK but not covalently, resulting in transient ATP blockade. Irreversible or reversible BTK inhibitors potentially bind to other kinases with lower affinity, particularly those of the TEC family. This binding can lead to side effects and specific toxicity profiles, depending on which and how many kinases are inhibited. Therefore, increasing selectivity for BTK reduces the risk of toxicities.

While the progress in BTK inhibition for lymphomas is encouraging, challenges and questions persist. Further research is warranted to validate these findings in larger cohorts, assess long-term effects, and explore the efficacy of BTK inhibitors across molecular subtypes of lymphomas. The continuous trajectory of research in this domain is characterized by a relentless pursuit of optimizing therapeutic efficacy while minimizing adverse effects, underscoring the dynamic nature of this field.

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS

The study reports an overall response rate of 84.2%, with a 2-year progression-free survival of 75.6% and an overall survival of 94.1%. The safety profile is described, with a focus on hematological and non-hematological toxicities.

The efficacy results against genotoxic therapy are so successful that the end of chemo-immunotherapy in some neoplasms, including lymphoma, especially for CLL, is now a recognized postulate by leading research groups. Importantly, the manuscript explores the role of ctDNA in cerebrospinal fluid for disease surveillance and treatment response monitoring. Changes in ctDNA levels corresponded to radiographic responses in some patients, highlighting the potential utility of liquid biopsy profiling in PCNSL.

The treatments for PCNSL and DLBCL differ significantly. HD-MTX stands as the primary therapy for PCNSL. Zanubrutinib, a novel oral BTK inhibitor, holds promise as a therapeutic intervention targeting BCR and toll-like receptor signaling pathways. BTKs traverse the blood-brain barrier. This study investigates the oncological outcomes of a combined regimen of methotrexate with zanubrutinib. An advantage of this study is the molecular profiling of tumors, either from paraffin-embedded tissue, peripheral blood, or cerebrospinal fluid. Complete response was achieved in 11 patients, partial response in 5 patients, and disease progression in 3 patients. The overall response rate was 84.2%, with a 5-year overall survival of 94.1%, notably better in cases with a germinal center genotype. Perhaps the most significant point of this article is the observed survival rate, which surpasses the estimated rate in the literature for this lymphoma subtype, typically below 30%. The only potential confounder in this series and its results is the median age of patients (57 years), as age over 60 is an adverse prognostic factor in this lymphoma; however, this median age aligns with literature estimates. One should approach these findings with caution due to the retrospective nature of the study, where the selection criteria for the 19 patients treated with zanubrutinib are not precisely defined. Although inclusion and exclusion criteria were established, it remains unclear whether cases were consecutively recruited and the criteria for initiating treatment with zanubrutinib.

The study's findings have future implications, including the necessity for larger-scale prospective cohort studies and longer follow-up periods to validate the results, and the study underscores the potential of zanubrutinib as a frontline therapeutic regimen for PCNSL, paving the way for further research into optimizing treatment strategies.

CONCLUSION

In summary, BTK inhibitors represent a transformative approach within the landscape of treatments for lymphomas. The evolving understanding of their mechanisms, coupled with developments of innovative applications in PCNSL and liquid biopsy monitoring, signifies a promising era in lymphoma therapeutics. Continued research endeavors are crucial to fully exploit the potential of BTK inhibitors for enhanced patient outcomes.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Lino-Silva LS, Martínez-Villavicencio S, and Rivera-Moncada LF contributed to this paper; Lino-Silva LS designed

the overall concept and outline of the manuscript; Martínez-Villavicencio S and Rivera-Moncada LF contributed to the discussion and design of the manuscript; Lino-Silva LS, Martínez-Villavicencio S, and Rivera-Moncada LF contributed to the writing and editing of the manuscript, and review of the literature.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors have no conflicts of interest to declare.

Country/Territory of origin: Mexico

ORCID number: Leonardo S Lino-Silva 0000-0002-7394-5123; Sabrina B Martínez-Villavicencio 0009-0005-6552-4133; Luisa F Rivera-Moncada 0009-0004-9329-7858.

Corresponding Author's Membership in Professional Societies: Mexican Society of Oncology (SMEO); Society of Latin-American Pathology (SLAP); European Network on Gastrointestinal Pathology (ENGIP).

S-Editor: Liu JH
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Wang N**, Chen FL, Pan L, Teng Y, Wei XJ, Guo HG, Jiang XM, Huang L, Liu SC, Liang ZL, Li WY. Clinical outcomes of newly diagnosed primary central nervous system lymphoma treated with zanubrutinib-based combination therapy. *World J Clin Oncol* 2023; **14**: 606-619 [PMID: 38179402 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v14.i12.606]

2 **Ferreri AJ**, Cwynarski K, Pulczynski E, Ponzoni M, Deckert M, Politi LS, Torri V, Fox CP, Rosée PL, Schorb E, Ambrosetti A, Roth A, Hemmaway C, Ferrari A, Linton KM, Rudà R, Binder M, Pukrop T, Balzarotti M, Fabbri A, Johnson P, Gørløv JS, Hess G, Panse J, Pisani F, Tucci A, Stilgenbauer S, Hertenstein B, Keller U, Krause SW, Levis A, Schmoll HJ, Cavalli F, Finke J, Reni M, Zucca E, Illerhaus G; International Extranodal Lymphoma Study Group (IELSG). Chemoimmunotherapy with methotrexate, cytarabine, thiotepa, and rituximab (MATRix regimen) in patients with primary CNS lymphoma: results of the first randomisation of the International Extranodal Lymphoma Study Group-32 (IELSG32) phase 2 trial. *Lancet Haematol* 2016; **3**: e217-e227 [PMID: 27132696 DOI: 10.1016/S2352-3026(16)00036-3]

3 **Nayak L**, Batchelor TT. Recent advances in treatment of primary central nervous system lymphoma. *Curr Treat Options Oncol* 2013; **14**: 539-552 [PMID: 23934511 DOI: 10.1007/s11864-013-0252-6]

4 **Grommes C**, Rubenstein JL, DeAngelis LM, Ferreri AJM, Batchelor TT. Comprehensive approach to diagnosis and treatment of newly diagnosed primary CNS lymphoma. *Neuro Oncol* 2019; **21**: 296-305 [PMID: 30418592 DOI: 10.1093/neuonc/noy192]

5 **Houillier C**, Soussain C, Ghesquières H, Soubeyran P, Chinot O, Taillandier L, Lamy T, Choquet S, Ahle G, Damaj G, Agapé P, Moluçon-Chabrot C, Amiel A, Delwail V, Fabbro M, Jardin F, Chauchet A, Moles-Moreau MP, Morschhauser F, Casasnovas O, Gressin R, Fornecker LM, Abraham J, Marolleau JP, Tempescul A, Campello C, Colin P, Tamburini J, Laribi K, Serrier C, Haioun C, Chebrek S, Schmitt A, Blonski M, Houot R, Boyle E, Bay JO, Oberic L, Tabouret E, Waultier A, Martin-Duverneuil N, Touitou V, Cassoux N, Kas A, Mokhtari K, Charlotte F, Alentorn A, Feuvret L, Le Garff-Tavernier M, Costopoulos M, Mathon B, Peyre M, Delgadillo D, Douzane H, Genet D, Aidaoui B, Hoang-Xuan K, Gyan E. Management and outcome of primary CNS lymphoma in the modern era: An LOC network study. *Neurology* 2020; **94**: e1027-e1039 [PMID: 31907289 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0000000000008900]

6 **Ferreri AJ**, Reni M, Foppoli M, Martelli M, Pangalis GA, Frezzato M, Cabras MG, Fabbri A, Corazzelli G, Ilariucci F, Rossi G, Soffietti R, Stelitano C, Vallisa D, Zaja F, Zoppegno L, Aondio GM, Avvisati G, Balzarotti M, Brandes AA, Fajardo J, Gomez H, Guarini A, Pinotti G, Rigacci L, Uhlmann C, Picozzi P, Vezzulli P, Ponzoni M, Zucca E, Caligaris-Cappio F, Cavalli F; International Extranodal Lymphoma Study Group (IELSG). High-dose cytarabine plus high-dose methotrexate versus high-dose methotrexate alone in patients with primary CNS lymphoma: a randomised phase 2 trial. *Lancet* 2009; **374**: 1512-1520 [PMID: 19767089 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(09)61416-1]

7 **Grommes C**, DeAngelis LM. Primary CNS Lymphoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2017; **35**: 2410-2418 [PMID: 28640701 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.72.7602]

8 **Rubenstein JL**, Gupta NK, Mannis GN, Lamarre AK, Treseler P. How I treat CNS lymphomas. *Blood* 2013; **122**: 2318-2330 [PMID: 23963042 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2013-06-453084]

9 **Burger JA**, Wiestner A. Targeting B cell receptor signalling in cancer: preclinical and clinical advances. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2018; **18**: 148-167 [PMID: 29348577 DOI: 10.1038/nrc.2017.121]

10 **Barf T**, Covey T, Izumi R, van de Kar B, Gulrajani M, van Lith B, van Hoek M, de Zwart E, Mittag D, Demont D, Verkaik S, Krantz F, Pearson PG, Ulrich R, Kaptein A. Acalabrutinib (ACP-196): A Covalent Bruton Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitor with a Differentiated Selectivity and In Vivo Potency Profile. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2017; **363**: 240-252 [PMID: 28882879 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.117.242909]

11 **Tam CS**, Trotman J, Opat S, Burger JA, Cull G, Gottlieb D, Harrup R, Johnston PB, Marlton P, Munoz J, Seymour JF, Simpson D, Tedeschi A, Elstrom R, Yu Y, Tang Z, Han L, Huang J, Novotny W, Wang L, Roberts AW. Phase 1 study of the selective BTK inhibitor zanubrutinib in B-cell malignancies and safety and efficacy evaluation in CLL. *Blood* 2019; **134**: 851-859 [PMID: 31340982 DOI: 10.1182/blood.2019001160]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 591-593

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.591

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

EDITORIAL

Feasibility and limitations of combined treatment for lateral pelvic lymph node metastases in rectal cancer

Ying-Zi Zheng, Fang-Fang Yan, Lian-Xiang Luo

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade C
Novelty: Grade B
Creativity or Innovation: Grade B
Scientific Significance: Grade B

P-Reviewer: Piozzi GN, Italy

Received: December 12, 2023
Revised: April 6, 2024
Accepted: April 16, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Ying-Zi Zheng, Fang-Fang Yan, The First Clinical College, Guangdong Medical University, Zhanjiang 524023, Guangdong Province, China

Lian-Xiang Luo, The Marine Biomedical Research Institute, Guangdong Medical University, Zhanjiang 524000, Guangdong Province, China

Corresponding author: Lian-Xiang Luo, PhD, Associate Professor, The Marine Biomedical Research Institute, Guangdong Medical University, No. 2 Wenming East Road, Xiashan District, Zhanjiang 524000, Guangdong Province, China. luolianxiang321@gdmu.edu.cn

Abstract

Colorectal cancer ranks among the most commonly diagnosed cancers globally, and is associated with a high rate of pelvic recurrence after surgery. In efforts to mitigate recurrence, pelvic lymph node dissection (PLND) is commonly advocated as an adjunct to radical surgery. Neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (NACRT) is a therapeutic approach employed in managing locally advanced rectal cancer, and has been found to increase the survival rates. Chua *et al* have proposed a combination of NACRT with selective PLND for addressing lateral pelvic lymph node metastases in rectal cancer patients, with the aim of reducing recurrence and improving survival outcomes. Nevertheless, certain studies have indicated that the addition of PLND to NACRT and total mesorectal excision did not yield a significant reduction in local recurrence rates or improvement in survival. Consequently, meticulous patient selection and perioperative chemotherapy may prove indispensable in ensuring the efficacy of PLND.

Key Words: Rectal cancer; Lateral pelvic lymph nodes metastases; Pelvic lymph node dissection; Neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy; Total mesorectal excision

Core Tip: Management of lateral pelvic lymph node metastases in rectal cancer patients who receive neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy and selective pelvic lymph node dissection (PLND), can be effective in reducing recurrence rates and extending survival. However, meticulous patient selection and aggressive perioperative chemotherapy are crucial factors contributing to the success of PLND in this context.

Citation: Zheng YZ, Yan FF, Luo LX. Feasibility and limitations of combined treatment for lateral pelvic lymph node metastases in rectal cancer. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 591-593
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/591.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.591

INTRODUCTION

As one of the most frequently identified types of cancer globally, colorectal cancer is the second greatest source of cancer mortality[1]. Surgery is still the main treatment for colorectal cancer, while there is a high incidence of pelvic recurrence after the procedure, which may be closely related to the perirectal lymph nodes in the mesentery. Research has shown that if total mesorectal is done, the rate of recurrence decreases significantly to 6.5%[2,3]. The recurrence rate of colorectal cancer in a local area is connected to lateral pelvic lymph node metastases (mLLN). According to Gerota and Villemin, a noteworthy lateral lymph flows from the lower rectum to the iliac lymph nodes. It has been reported that 15%-20% of people with locally advanced middle and low rectal cancer experience mLLN, and the treatment of lateral pelvic lymph node disease is quite complex from both an oncological and technical standpoint[4]. Chua *et al*[5] suggested that the best approach to treating mLLN is a multi-modal one, which includes neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (NACRT) and selective pelvic lymph node dissection (PLND). Based on some reports, PLND is more advantageous in terms of prognostic survival than conservative or conventional resection in colorectal cancer and mLLN cases. The primary method for predicting mLLN is based on the size diagnosis of the maximum short axis diameter (SAD) of the lymph nodes on computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) after NACRT. However, it has recently been suggested that it is more appropriate to use the initial lateral pelvic lymph nodes (LPN) size rather than the post-chemoradiotherapy (CRT) LPN size as a predictor of mLLN, because in clinical practice, there are many cases where CRT is not performed before surgery for various reasons, such as patient rejection, old age, or complication[6]. Therefore, PLND is advocated as an adjunct to radical surgery for colorectal cancer. There exist different views from East to West regarding the current indications for PLND. Malakorn *et al*[7] recommend using a 5mm threshold for lymph node SAD after neoadjuvant therapy, aiming to diagnose PLND. Chua *et al*[5] proposed that based on neoadjuvant pre-MRI, it would be prudent to select a SAD of 7 mm or the presence of suspicious features as criteria for selective PLND until more reliable data are available. The results from Chinese studies suggested that PLND should be considered for patients with MRI SAD ≥ 7 mm after CRT and poor/signet/mucinous adenocarcinoma. However, for the patients who suffered from LPN enlarged beyond the obturator region or the intrailiac region or involving 3 or more LPN, even PLND was performed after preoperative CRT, the prognosis is still unsatisfactory and poor. Therefore, PLND should be carefully considered for such patients[8]. Studies from Japan proved that the optimal indications for PLND in rectal cancer are the initial lymph node ≥ 8 mm and the distance between the anus and the tumor edge > 5 cm or the initial lymph node ≥ 6 mm and the distance between the anus and the tumor edge ≤ 5 cm[6,9]. Malakorn *et al*[7] showed no evidence of local or distant recurrence of disease after 2 years of follow-up by using minimally invasive robot-assisted PLND to treat patients with persistent lateral pelvic lymph node enlargement after NACRT, which confirmed that Chua *et al*[5] The proposed robotic assistance may be a useful aid for PLND. In addition, studies retrospectively compared the clinical results of elderly and non-elderly patients and concluded that selective lateral PLND after NACRT in elderly patients with locally advanced rectal cancer was safe[10]. Lateral PLND may improve the tumor prognosis in some rectal cancer patients but may adversely affect the functional prognosis. Cribb *et al*[11] compared the functional outcomes of lateral PLND patients with non-lateral PLND patients and concluded that lateral PLND is associated with male sexual dysfunction compared to standard surgical resection. Another study indicated that additional lateral PLND use not only increased postoperative complications, urinary dysfunction, and sexual dysfunction, but also did not improve recurrence rates or enhance long-term survival [12]. Law *et al*'s research revealed that lateral PLND patients did not have a statistically significant decrease in 3-year and 5-year local recurrence rates in comparison to non-lateral PLND patients (P = 0.10 and P = 0.12, respectively)[13]. Additionally, there was no meaningful change in overall survival rate for 3-year and 5-year periods (P = 0.81 and P = 0.57, respectively). Therefore, the addition of lateral PLND to NACRT and total mesorectal excision (TME) did not have a substantial effect on local recurrence rates or survival. The study by Zhou *et al*[14] also illustrated that patients who experienced pathological lateral lymph node metastasis and received TME + lateral PLND after NACRT still showed a higher overall recurrence rate after surgery. To understand the role of PLND in low rectal cancer, further studies are required. Both NACRT and lateral PLND have the potential for residual tumors, and adjuvant chemotherapy (ACT) after radical surgery can help eliminate micrometastases, thus preventing distant metastasis and improving prognosis. Jiang *et al*[15] explored the effectiveness of ACT in the new era of intensive local therapy (*i.e.*, post-NACRT TME and lateral PLND in patients with clinically suspected mLLN, and the results showed that the efficacy of adding ACT to TME combined with lateral PLND after NACRT was not confirmed in patients. Besides, patients with age ≥ 64 years and those with ypStage 0 may not receive benefit from ACT after NACRT followed by TME plus PLND. Therefore, it is necessary to further explore the effectiveness of ACT in clinically suspected mLLN patients.

CONCLUSION

The ideal management of mLLN in rectal cancer patients requires a comprehensive approach involving NACRT comb-

ined with selective PLND. Criteria for the latter include SAD in lymph nodes after neoadjuvant use of 5 mm, SAD in lymph nodes as displayed on pre-neoadjuvant MRI of 7mm, or any suspicious features. To guarantee the efficacy of lateral PLND, careful patient selection and thorough perioperative chemotherapy must be used.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zheng YZ, Yan FF, and Luo LX wrote the editorial; Luo LX conceived and designed the editorial, reviewed the paper, and provided comments; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors declare no conflicts of interest for this article.

Country of origin: China

ORCID number: Lian-Xiang Luo 0000-0002-3391-9713.

S-Editor: Lin C
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Li Y**, Wang J, Ma X, Tan L, Yan Y, Xue C, Hui B, Liu R, Ma H, Ren J. A Review of Neoadjuvant Chemoradiotherapy for Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer. *Int J Biol Sci* 2016; **12**: 1022-1031 [PMID: 27489505 DOI: 10.7150/ijbs.15438]
2 **Yoo GS**, Park HC, Yu JI. Clinical implication and management of rectal cancer with clinically suspicious lateral pelvic lymph node metastasis: A radiation oncologist's perspective. *Front Oncol* 2022; **12**: 960527 [PMID: 36568216 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2022.960527]
3 **Heald RJ**, Husband EM, Ryall RD. The mesorectum in rectal cancer surgery--the clue to pelvic recurrence? *Br J Surg* 1982; **69**: 613-616 [PMID: 6751457 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800691019]
4 **Kim MC**, Oh JH. Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection After Neoadjuvant Chemoradiotherapy in Patients With Rectal Cancer: A Single-Center Experience and Literature Review. *Ann Coloproctol* 2021; **37**: 382-394 [PMID: 34961302 DOI: 10.3393/ac.2021.00913.0130]
5 **Chua JYJ**, Ngu JCY, Teo NZ. Current perspectives on the management of lateral pelvic lymph nodes in rectal cancer. *World J Clin Oncol* 2023; **14**: 584-592 [PMID: 38179407 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v14.i12.584]
6 **Bae JH**, Song J, Kim JH, Kye BH, Lee IK, Cho HM, Lee YS. Lateral Lymph Node Size and Tumor Distance From Anal Verge Accurately Predict Positive Lateral Pelvic Lymph Nodes in Rectal Cancer: A Multi-Institutional Retrospective Cohort Study. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2023; **66**: 785-795 [PMID: 36649149 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000002528]
7 **Malakorn S**, Yang Y, Bednarski BK, Kaur H, You YN, Holliday EB, Dasari A, Skibber JM, Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Chang GJ. Who Should Get Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection After Neoadjuvant Chemoradiation? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2019; **62**: 1158-1166 [PMID: 31490825 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000001465]
8 **Zhou S**, Zhang H, Liang J, Fu W, Lou Z, Feng B, Yang Y, Xie Z, Liu Q; Chinese Lateral Node Collaborative Group. Feasibility, Indications, and Prognostic Significance of Selective Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection After Preoperative Chemoradiotherapy in Middle/Low Rectal Cancer: Results of a Multicenter Lateral Node Study in China. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2024; **67**: 228-239 [PMID: 36649192 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000002640]
9 **Malakorn S**, Ouchi A, Sammour T, Bednarski BK, Chang GJ. Robotic Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection after Neoadjuvant Chemoradiation: View from the West. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2018; **61**: 1119-1120 [PMID: 30086062 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000001170]
10 **Agawa K**, Matsuda T, Yamashita K, Hasegawa H, Takiguchi G, Urakawa N, Kanaji S, Oshikiri T, Nakamura T, Suzuki S, Kakeji Y. Feasibility and Safety of Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection After Neoadjuvant Chemoradiotherapy for Elderly Patients With Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2021; **41**: 1677-1682 [PMID: 33788765 DOI: 10.21873/anticanres.14931]
11 **Cribb BI**, Kong J, McCormick J, Warrier SK, Heriot AG. Functional outcomes after lateral pelvic lymph node dissection for rectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2022; **37**: 583-595 [PMID: 34846550 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-021-04073-8]
12 **Hajibandeh S**, Hajibandeh S, Matthews J, Palmer L, Maw A. Meta-analysis of survival and functional outcomes after total mesorectal excision with or without lateral pelvic lymph node dissection in rectal cancer surgery. *Surgery* 2020; **168**: 486-496 [PMID: 32620303 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2020.04.063]
13 **Law BZY**, Yusuf Z, Ng YE, Aly EH. Does adding lateral pelvic lymph node dissection to neoadjuvant chemotherapy improve outcomes in low rectal cancer? *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2020; **35**: 1387-1395 [PMID: 32504333 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-020-03656-1]
14 **Zhou S**, Jiang Y, Pei W, Liang J, Zhou Z. Risk factors and prognostic significance of lateral pelvic lymph node dissection after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for rectal patients with clinically suspected lateral lymph node metastasis. *BMC Surg* 2021; **21**: 441 [PMID: 34961494 DOI: 10.1186/s12893-021-01443-5]
15 **Jiang YJ**, Zhou SC, Chen JH, Liang JW. Oncologic Benefit of Adjuvant Therapy in Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Metastasis following Neoadjuvant Chemoradiotherapy and Lateral Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection. *J Cancer* 2022; **13**: 3427-3433 [PMID: 36313037 DOI: 10.7150/jca.77689]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 594-598

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.594

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

EDITORIAL

Navigating breast cancer brain metastasis: Risk factors, prognostic indicators, and treatment perspectives

Jayalingappa Karthik, Amit Sehrawat, Mayank Kapoor, Deepak Sundriyal

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade B
Novelty: Grade B
Creativity or Innovation: Grade C
Scientific Significance: Grade B

P-Reviewer: Ebrahimifar M, Iran

Received: January 5, 2024
Revised: January 24, 2024
Accepted: April 15, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Jayalingappa Karthik, Amit Sehrawat, Mayank Kapoor, Deepak Sundriyal, Department of Medical Oncology Haematology, All India Institute of Medical Sciences Rishikesh, Rishikesh 249203, Uttarakhand, India

Corresponding author: Amit Sehrawat, MBBS, MD, DrNB, Associate Professor, Department of Medical Oncology Haematology, All India Institute of Medical Sciences Rishikesh, Virbhadra Road, Rishikesh 249203, India. dramitsehrawat@gmail.com

Abstract

In this editorial, we comment on the article by Chen *et al*. We specifically focus on the risk factors, prognostic factors, and management of brain metastasis (BM) in breast cancer (BC). BC is the second most common cancer to have BM after lung cancer. Independent risk factors for BM in BC are: HER-2 positive BC, triple-negative BC, and germline *BRCA* mutation. Other factors associated with BM are lung metastasis, age less than 40 years, and African and American ancestry. Even though risk factors associated with BM in BC are elucidated, there is a lack of data on predictive models for BM in BC. Few studies have been made to formulate predictive models or nomograms to address this issue, where age, grade of tumor, HER-2 receptor status, and number of metastatic sites (1 *vs* > 1) were predictive of BM in metastatic BC. However, none have been used in clinical practice. National Comprehensive Cancer Network recommends screening of BM in advanced BC only when the patient is symptomatic or suspicious of central nervous system symptoms; routine screening for BM in BC is not recommended in the guidelines. BM decreases the quality of life and will have a significant psychological impact. Further studies are required for designing validated nomograms or predictive models for BM in BC; these models can be used in the future to develop treatment approaches to prevent BM, which improves the quality of life and overall survival.

Key Words: Breast cancer; Brain metastasis; HER2 positive; Metastatic breast cancer; Risk factors, Predictive models

Core Tip: Breast cancer brain metastasis management faces many challenges. Key risk factors include HER-2 positivity, triple-negative subtype, and germline *BRCA* mutation. Limited predictive models emphasize the need for validated nomograms. Current guidelines recommend screening when symptomatic. Chen *et al* highlight HER-2 and triple-negative associations, impacting treatment strategies. Proactive research is crucial for preventive strategies, blood-brain barrier-penetrating therapies, and validated predictive models.

Citation: Karthik J, Sehrawat A, Kapoor M, Sundriyal D. Navigating breast cancer brain metastasis: Risk factors, prognostic indicators, and treatment perspectives. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 594-598
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/594.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.594

INTRODUCTION

Breast cancer (BC) is one of the three most common cancers in women, apart from lung cancer and colorectal cancer. BC accounts for 30% of all cancer in women and is the leading cause of death in the age group between 20 to 59 years. At the same time, survival of BC is about 90%[1]. BC is the second most common cancer to metastasize to the brain after lung cancer; about 30%-50% of metastatic BC (MBC) develop brain metastasis (BM)[2]. The incidence of breast cancer brain metastasis (BCBM) has increased in recent times; reasons could be due to the increased survival rate of MBCs, the inability of some drugs to cross the brain barrier, the use of targeted agents to control systemic disease[3] and the use of newer imaging techniques to diagnose the central nervous system (CNS) metastasis.

BM significantly reduces the quality of life and overall survival (OS) and poses significant challenges in the treatment. Median OS of BCBM ranges around 4.5 to 13.8 months. Factors influencing the survival include patient age, Karnofsky performance status > 70, single BM, size of BM < 5 cm, and control of extracranial disease.

Considering the challenges in the management, poor quality of life, and poor OS with BCBM, there is a need for an hour to formulate a nomogram or identify the risk factors associated with BM and prevention of it. Future research should focus on systemic therapy, which can penetrate the blood-brain barrier and target metastatic lesions. In our discussion, we focus on elucidating risk factors associated with BM and prospects for managing BM in BC.

In the recent issue of *World Journal of Clinical Oncology*, Chen *et al*[4] published a retrospective analysis of clinicopathological features and prognostic factors of BCBM. The study involved 68 patients with BCBM, treated between 2000 and 2022; these BCBM patients were matched with BC patients without BM in the ratio of 1:2. Cohort consisted of 19.1% of luminal A subtype, 32.2% of luminal B subtype, 20.6% of HER-2 overexpressing subtype, 20.6% of triple-negative BC (TNBC) subtype. The median age of diagnosis of BC was 47 years. The median age from diagnosis of BM in BCBM was 50.5 years. The incidence of BM in the study population was 4.42%, and the prevalence of BM at the time of diagnosis was 0.089%. The cumulative incidence of BM in stage IV was 10.3%. The median time from diagnosis of BC to development of BM was 33.5 months (0-181). In multivariate analysis, stage III/IV tumor at initial diagnosis [hazard ratio (HR): 5.58, 95% confidence interval (CI): 1.99-15.68], lung metastasis (HR: 24.18, 95%CI: 6.40-91.43), and HER2-overexpressing and TNBC were significantly associated with BM and were more prone for BM in BCBM. The presence or absence of bone metastasis, molecular type, and presence or absence of neurological symptoms were significantly associated with the prognosis of patients with BCBM. These results were consistent with previous population-based studies regarding the incidence of BM in BC patients (5.1%) and molecular subtype association with BM in BC patients. In contrast, the cumulative incidence of BM after diagnosis of MBC was higher in previous studies A retrospective study by Darlix *et al* [5]. involving 16703 MBC from French epidemiological strategy and medical economics reported that 7.2% of the study population had BM at the time of diagnosis of MBC, and 24.6% of the study population developed BM during follow-up, median time 17 months for BM. Differences in these studies can be attributed to smaller sample size and inclusion of earlier stages of BC in Chen *et al*[4]. When considered among the early-stage BC, the incidence of BC was similar to previous studies. A study by Pestalozzi *et al*[6], aimed at identifying BC patients at risk of BM in the trial of an international BC study group, showed 10-year cumulative BM incidence was 5.2% and significantly associated with lymph node (> 4, 2.2%; $P < 0.01$), HER-2 expression (2.7%, $P < 0.01$), large tumor size (1.7%, $P < 0.01$) and ER-negative tumors (2.3%, $P < 0.01$) in univariate analysis. Similar observations were made in Chen *et al*[4] study.

The study highlighted the HER-2 overexpression in BCBM. In the study population, HER-2 overexpression was seen in 20.6%, which was similar to other previous studies, and it was statistically significant with BCBM in both univariate and multivariate analysis. HER-2 is an oncogene that encodes 185-kDa transmembrane glycoprotein receptor with intracellular tyrosine kinase activity and belongs to the epidermal growth factor receptors family. These receptors are involved in intracellular signal transduction pathways such as PI3K/Akt, Ras/MEK/ERK, and JAK/STAT, which control epithelial cell growth, angiogenesis, migration differentiation, and survival. In humans, HER-2 overexpression is seen in 25% of BCs; overexpression is mainly attributed to HER-2 gene amplification and HER-2 signaling pathways. HER-2 overexpression association with CNS metastasis in BC has been shown in both pre- and post-trastuzumab era, indicating biological predisposition of HER-2 positive BC for BM and increased survival of HER-2 positive BC with the use of trastuzumab. The study by Chen *et al*[4] was unique in that it included cohorts from the pre-trastuzumab and post-trastuzumab eras in China. Among 68 patients, 52.9% received HER-2 targeted therapy, and the median OS of the trastuzumab arm was 17 months, which was similar to the reported median OS in previous studies in the range of 13.1-

17.5 months[7-9] and the highest for capecitabine + tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI) arm of 54 months. However, the study did not highlight the secondary prevention of BM in patients receiving HER-2 targeted therapy without BM. Western studies have shown a longer median time to BCBM with trastuzumab (15 months *vs* 10 months, $P = 0.035$) and capecitabine + TKI[10,11]. These findings could have helped us understand the disease biology and design clinical trials to prevent BM.

TNBC accounts for 15% to 20 % of all BC diagnosed worldwide, more commonly seen in young age and older African American women[12-14]. TNBC is a highly aggressive variant lacking ER/PR and HER-2 expression. Due to the aggressive nature of the disease, distant metastasis is seen in the early stage of TNBC. Almost one-third of patients with TNBC will develop BM[15]. BM occurs early in the course of the disease compared to HR-positive and HER-2-positive BC [5,16]. Even early-stage BC treated with curative intent has distant recurrence within five years and is more prone to metastasis to the brain, liver, lungs, and other organs. In a retrospective study of 2448 patients involving stage I to stage III BC, the cumulative incidence rate of developing BM as the first site of recurrence at five years was 2.8%, 4.6%, and 9.6% among patients with stage I, II, and III disease, respectively ($P < 0.0001$)[17]. Similarly, the incidence of BM in TNBC at the time of diagnosis of MBC is around 14%. Recent studies have shown that the cumulative incidence rate of BM in TNBC after diagnosis of MBC continued to increase over the period[5,18,19]. Similar observations were made by Chen *et al*[4], where TNBC accounted for 20.6% with an incidence rate of 20%-30% and was significantly associated with BM in multivariate analysis[HR: 4.34 (1.55-12.11), $P = 0.005$] and had a shorter survival time of 8 months. Management of TNBC with BM poses a unique challenge as targeted therapy and hormonal therapy, which are used in HER2 and HR-positive subtypes, are ineffective, and only a few systemic chemotherapy agents can penetrate the intact blood-brain barrier. Considering the aggressive nature of the disease and challenges in the management of BM, OS, and prognosis are poor for TNBC when compared to HR-positive and HER-2-positive tumors[18,19].

Data are lacking in the secondary prevention of BM in MBC and routine screening for BM in MBC. As BM is associated with poor survival and poor quality of life, identifying the early metastatic brain lesion before the appearance of symptoms and managing it with its local therapy would improve the quality of life and survival; this approach showed significant differences in small cell lung cancer (SCLC) of the lung.

Data still need to be included, and only a few studies have been done in this regard to address occult BM. A study involving 155 screening imaging studies from four clinical trials conducted between 1998 and 2001 showed occult BM in 14.8% of patients. These clinical trials excluded established BM. Survival among patients with occult BM and symptomatic BM were similar. Clinical trials are ongoing to evaluate the role of periodic magnetic resonance imaging brain screening and its benefit in terms of quality of life and survival outcomes (NCT03881605, NCT04030507, NCT03617341).

The success of prophylactic cranial radiation (PCI) in SCLC, which prevented BM, was partly due to the high incidence of BM with no PCI intervention in SCLC (59%-67%).

However, in metastatic breast lesions, overall incidence is about 30%-50%, lowest for ER/PR subtype and highest for HER-2 positive and TNBC. Data are lacking on the benefits of PCI in MBC. Murine models and extrapolating these to computational models have shown promising results of the PCI role[20,21]. With recent advances in hippocampal sparing whole brain radiation therapy, which has shown a lesser incidence of neuropsychological adverse events, a newer approach is needed to prevent and treat HER-2/TNBC.

One such approach is identifying the high-risk individuals who will benefit from PCI in MBC. Predictive models are needed to determine the patients with MBC who will develop BM and benefit from PCI. Such an approach to formulating predictive models for identifying BM was used by Graesslin *et al*[22] in 2011, who made a nomogram to predict the risk of BM in MBC. The study involved 2136 patients of MBC, out of which 362 patients developed subsequent BM. In multivariate analysis, age, grade of the tumor, ER/PR negative and HER-2 positive status, a number of metastatic sites (1 *vs* > 1), and short disease-free survival were all independent factors associated with BM in MBC. Race, primary tumor size, and nodal stage were not significantly associated with BM in MBC. A nomogram was made using this data, and to test the accuracy and performance of the model, discrimination and calibration metrics were quantified. In the external validation set, discrimination was good, with an area under the curve (AUC) of 0.74 (95%CI: 0.70-0.79), and the calibration of the set showed no significant differences between the probabilities of observed and predicted probabilities of BM ($P = 1$). Genre *et al*[23] validated this predictive model by retrospective analysis and the study included 70 MBC patients. Multivariate analysis showed that risk factors associated with BM in MBC were HER-2+ status, TNBC subtype, and number of extracranial metastases. Validation cohort characteristics were similar in age, histological type, immunohistochemical subtypes, and number of brain metastases. Quantified discrimination and calibration were comparable with Graesslin's nomogram model [AUC of 0.695 (95%CI: 0.61-0.77) *vs* AUC of 0.74 (95%CI: 0.70-0.79)][22]. Such predictive models are required in the future to identify the high-risk individuals who are likely to develop BM and design the trail to evaluate the role of PCI or chemotherapy/targeted therapy/immunotherapy. Temozolomide has shown promising results in the secondary prevention of BM in the metastatic breast in HER-2 positive subtype cancer in the phase I trial, and further evaluation is ongoing in phase II[24-26].

CONCLUSION

Management of BCBM is a growing challenge; future research is needed to formulate predictive models for BM in BC, overcome the difficulties of drug transport through the blood-brain barrier, and early intervention of asymptomatic BM. Research focusing on these topics would significantly reduce BM's burden and improve survival and quality of life in BCBM.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Karthik J and Sehrawat A designed the overall concept and outline of the manuscript, and contributed to writing and editing the manuscript, and review of the literature; Kapoor M and Sundriyal D contributed to the discussion and design of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interest.

Country of origin: India

ORCID number: Amit Sehrawat 0000-0001-7100-8999; Mayank Kapoor 0000-0002-7764-0044; Deepak Sundriyal 0000-0002-6378-7694.

S-Editor: Che XX
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Yuan YY

REFERENCES

1 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2020. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2020; **70**: 7-30 [PMID: 31912902 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21590]
2 **Lin NU**, Gaspar LE, Soffietti R. Breast Cancer in the Central Nervous System: Multidisciplinary Considerations and Management. *Am Soc Clin Oncol Educ Book* 2017; **37**: 45-56 [PMID: 28561683 DOI: 10.1200/EDBK_175338]
3 **Lin NU**, Winer EP. Brain metastases: the HER2 paradigm. *Clin Cancer Res* 2007; **13**: 1648-1655 [PMID: 17363517 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-2478]
4 **Chen YR**, Xu ZX, Jiang LX, Dong ZW, Yu PF, Zhang Z, Gu GL. Analysis of clinicopathological features and prognostic factors of breast cancer brain metastasis. *World J Clin Oncol* 2023; **14**: 445-458 [PMID: 38059189 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v14.i11.445]
5 **Darlix A**, Louvel G, Fraisse J, Jacot W, Brain E, Debled M, Mouret-Reynier MA, Goncalves A, Dalenc F, Delaloge S, Campone M, Augereau P, Ferrero JM, Levy C, Fumet JD, Lecouillard I, Cottu P, Petit T, Uwer L, Jouannaud C, Leheurteur M, Dieras V, Robain M, Chevrot M, Pasquier D, Bachelot T. Impact of breast cancer molecular subtypes on the incidence, kinetics and prognosis of central nervous system metastases in a large multicentre real-life cohort. *Br J Cancer* 2019; **121**: 991-1000 [PMID: 31719684 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-019-0619-y]
6 **Pestalozzi BC**, Zahrieh D, Price KN, Holmberg SB, Lindtner J, Collins J, Crivellari D, Fey MF, Murray E, Pagani O, Simoncini E, Castiglione-Gertsch M, Gelber RD, Coates AS, Goldhirsch A; International Breast Cancer Study Group (IBCSG). Identifying breast cancer patients at risk for Central Nervous System (CNS) metastases in trials of the International Breast Cancer Study Group (IBCSG). *Ann Oncol* 2006; **17**: 935-944 [PMID: 16603601 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdl064]
7 **Dawood S**, Broglio K, Esteva FJ, Ibrahim NK, Kau SW, Islam R, Aldape KD, Yu TK, Hortobagyi GN, Gonzalez-Angulo AM. Defining prognosis for women with breast cancer and CNS metastases by HER2 status. *Ann Oncol* 2008; **19**: 1242-1248 [PMID: 18334512 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdn036]
8 **Garcia-Alvarez A**, Papakonstantinou A, Oliveira M. Brain Metastases in HER2-Positive Breast Cancer: Current and Novel Treatment Strategies. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13**: 2927 [PMID: 34208287 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13122927]
9 **Stemmler J**, Schmitt M, Willems A, Bernhard H, Harbeck N, Heinemann V. Brain metastases in HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer: Comparative analysis of trastuzumab levels in serum and cerebrospinal fluid. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 1525 [DOI: 10.1200/jco.2006.24.18_suppl.1525]
10 **Saura C**, Oliveira M, Feng YH, Dai MS, Chen SW, Hurvitz SA, Kim SB, Moy B, Delaloge S, Gradishar W, Masuda N, Palacova M, Trudeau ME, Mattson J, Yap YS, Hou MF, De Laurentiis M, Yeh YM, Chang HT, Yau T, Wildiers H, Haley B, Fagnani D, Lu YS, Crown J, Lin J, Takahashi M, Takano T, Yamaguchi M, Fujii T, Yao B, Bebchuk J, Keyvanjah K, Bryce R, Brufsky A; NALA Investigators. Neratinib Plus Capecitabine Versus Lapatinib Plus Capecitabine in HER2-Positive Metastatic Breast Cancer Previously Treated With ≥ 2 HER2-Directed Regimens: Phase III NALA Trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: 3138-3149 [PMID: 32678716 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.20.00147]
11 **Park YH**, Park MJ, Ji SH, Yi SY, Lim DH, Nam DH, Lee JI, Park W, Choi DH, Huh SJ, Ahn JS, Kang WK, Park K, Im YH. Trastuzumab treatment improves brain metastasis outcomes through control and durable prolongation of systemic extracranial disease in HER2-overexpressing breast cancer patients. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **100**: 894-900 [PMID: 19240719 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604941]
12 **DeSantis CE**, Fedewa SA, Goding Sauer A, Kramer JL, Smith RA, Jemal A. Breast cancer statistics, 2015: Convergence of incidence rates between black and white women. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2016; **66**: 31-42 [PMID: 26513636 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21320]
13 **Plasilova ML**, Hayse B, Killelea BK, Horowitz NR, Chagpar AB, Lannin DR. Features of triple-negative breast cancer: Analysis of 38,813 cases from the national cancer database. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2016; **95**: e4614 [PMID: 27583878 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000004614]
14 **Kohler BA**, Sherman RL, Howlader N, Jemal A, Ryerson AB, Henry KA, Boscoe FP, Cronin KA, Lake A, Noone AM, Henley SJ, Eheman CR, Anderson RN, Penberthy L. Annual Report to the Nation on the Status of Cancer, 1975-2011, Featuring Incidence of Breast Cancer Subtypes by Race/Ethnicity, Poverty, and State. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2015; **107**: djv048 [PMID: 25825511 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djv048]
15 **Kuksis M**, Gao Y, Tran W, Hoey C, Kiss A, Komorowski AS, Dhaliwal AJ, Sahgal A, Das S, Chan KK, Jerzak KJ. The incidence of brain metastases among patients with metastatic breast cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Neuro Oncol* 2021; **23**: 894-904 [PMID: 33367836 DOI: 10.1093/neuonc/noaa285]
16 **Kaidar-Person O**, Meattini I, Jain P, Bult P, Simone N, Kindts I, Steffens R, Weltens C, Navarria P, Belkacemi Y, Lopez-Guerra J, Livi L, Baumert BG, Vieites B, Limon D, Kurman N, Ko K, Yu JB, Chiang V, Poortmans P, Zagar T. Discrepancies between biomarkers of primary

breast cancer and subsequent brain metastases: an international multicenter study. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2018; **167**: 479-483 [PMID: 28975433 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-017-4526-8]

17 **Dawood S**, Lei X, Litton JK, Buchholz TA, Hortobagyi GN, Gonzalez-Angulo AM. Incidence of brain metastases as a first site of recurrence among women with triple receptor-negative breast cancer. *Cancer* 2012; **118**: 4652-4659 [PMID: 22359359 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.27434]

18 **Lin NU**, Claus E, Sohl J, Razzak AR, Arnaout A, Winer EP. Sites of distant recurrence and clinical outcomes in patients with metastatic triple-negative breast cancer: high incidence of central nervous system metastases. *Cancer* 2008; **113**: 2638-2645 [PMID: 18833576 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.23930]

19 **Jin J**, Gao Y, Zhang J, Wang L, Wang B, Cao J, Shao Z, Wang Z. Incidence, pattern and prognosis of brain metastases in patients with metastatic triple negative breast cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2018; **18**: 446 [PMID: 29673325 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-018-4371-0]

20 **Smith DL**, Debeb BG, Diagaradjane P, Larson R, Kumar S, Ning J, Lacerda L, Li L, Woodward WA. Prophylactic cranial irradiation reduces the incidence of brain metastasis in a mouse model of metastatic, HER2-positive breast cancer. *Genes Cancer* 2021; **12**: 28-38 [PMID: 33884104 DOI: 10.18632/genesandcancer.212]

21 **Smith DL**, Debeb BG, Thames HD, Woodward WA. Computational Modeling of Micrometastatic Breast Cancer Radiation Dose Response. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2016; **96**: 179-187 [PMID: 27511855 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2016.04.014]

22 **Graesslin O**, Abdulkarim BS, Coutant C, Huguet F, Gabos Z, Hsu L, Marpeau O, Uzan S, Pusztai L, Strom EA, Hortobagyi GN, Rouzier R, Ibrahim NK. Nomogram to predict subsequent brain metastasis in patients with metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 2032-2037 [PMID: 20308667 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.24.6314]

23 **Genre L**, Roché H, Varela L, Kanoun D, Ouali M, Filleron T, Dalenc F. External validation of a published nomogram for prediction of brain metastasis in patients with extra-cerebral metastatic breast cancer and risk regression analysis. *Eur J Cancer* 2017; **72**: 200-209 [PMID: 28042991 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2016.10.019]

24 **Palmieri D**, Duchnowska R, Woditschka S, Hua E, Qian Y, Biernat W, Sosińska-Mielcarek K, Gril B, Stark AM, Hewitt SM, Liewehr DJ, Steinberg SM, Jassem J, Steeg PS. Profound prevention of experimental brain metastases of breast cancer by temozolomide in an MGMT-dependent manner. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 2727-2739 [PMID: 24634373 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2588]

25 **Zimmer AS**, Steinberg SM, Smart DD, Gilbert MR, Armstrong TS, Burton E, Houston N, Biassou N, Gril B, Brastianos PK, Carter S, Lyden D, Lipkowitz S, Steeg PS. Temozolomide in secondary prevention of HER2-positive breast cancer brain metastases. *Future Oncol* 2020; **16**: 899-909 [PMID: 32270710 DOI: 10.2217/fon-2020-0094]

26 **Jenkins S**, Zhang W, Steinberg SM, Nousome D, Houston N, Wu X, Armstrong TS, Burton E, Smart DD, Shah R, Peer CJ, Mozarsky B, Arisa O, Figg WD, Mendoza TR, Vera E, Brastianos P, Carter S, Gilbert MR, Anders CK, Connolly RM, Tweed C, Smith KL, Khan I, Lipkowitz S, Steeg PS, Zimmer AS. Phase I Study and Cell-Free DNA Analysis of T-DM1 and Metronomic Temozolomide for Secondary Prevention of HER2-Positive Breast Cancer Brain Metastases. *Clin Cancer Res* 2023; **29**: 1450-1459 [PMID: 36705597 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-22-0855]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 599-602

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.599

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

EDITORIAL

Colorectal cancer: Getting the perspective and context right

Jun De Lu, Kok Yang Tan

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade C
Novelty: Grade C
Creativity or Innovation: Grade C
Scientific Significance: Grade C

P-Reviewer: Farouk S, Egypt

Received: February 10, 2024
Revised: April 7, 2024
Accepted: April 15, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Jun De Lu, Department of General Surgery, Khoo Teck Puat Hospital, Singapore 768828, Singapore

Kok Yang Tan, Department of Surgery, Khoo Teck Puat Hospital, Singapore 768828, Singapore

Corresponding author: Kok Yang Tan, FRCS (Ed), MBBS, MMed, Associate Professor, Surgeon, Department of Surgery, Khoo Teck Puat Hospital, No. 90 Yishun Central, Singapore 768828, Singapore. kokyangtan@gmail.com

Abstract

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is a significant global health burden, being the third leading cancer globally. Its incidence has been observed to be higher in developed regions such as North America and Europe with geographical variations in mortality rates. Efforts to address this disease burden include promoting early detection through screening and implementing treatment strategies to improve patient outcomes. With the growing and aging population, the incidence of CRC will undoubtedly increase. These epidemiological trends will mean that healthcare professionals will increasingly encounter CRC in more complex patients. Hence, it becomes imperative to have a deeper appreciation of the pathophysiology of CRC and understand the intricate interplay between a patient's physiology and their goals of care before offering treatment. This review article will aim to encapsulate the important nuances and perspectives of managing this disease in the context of an elderly patient.

Key Words: Colorectal cancer; Cancer epidemiology; Management; Holistic care; Screening

Core tip: Colorectal cancer (CRC) is a global health concern, especially among older individuals. A holistic, patient-centered approach, incorporating a multidisciplinary approach and shared decision-making is crucial for optimal management. Continued research and collaboration are vital for advancing knowledge and improving patient care in CRC treatment and prevention.

Citation: Lu JD, Tan KY. Colorectal cancer: Getting the perspective and context right. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 599-602
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/599.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.599

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) represents itself as a significant global health burden, being the third leading cancer globally with approximately 1.14 million new cases and 538136 deaths in 2020[1]. Its incidence has been observed to be higher in developed regions such as North America and Europe, while lower rates have been observed in Africa and Asia[2]. There also appears to be geographical variations in mortality rates, most notably higher in low and middle-income countries due to limited access to public healthcare services[3-5]. Efforts to address this burden include promoting early detection through screening and implementing treatment strategies to improve patient outcomes.

CRC is strongly associated with aging, with incidence rates increasing substantially in older populations. Around 87% of cases are diagnosed in individuals aged 50 or older[6] with Zaki *et al*[7] finding that the incidence of CRC increases sharply after the age of 50. These findings underscore the significance of age as a major risk factor and emphasize the importance of early detection efforts through age-appropriate screening to mitigate the disease burden.

As the population of a country increases, so will the incidence of CRC. These epidemiological trends will mean that healthcare professionals will increasingly encounter CRC in more complex patients. Hence, it becomes imperative to have a deeper appreciation of the pathophysiology of CRC and understand the intricate interplay between a patient's physiology and their goals of care before offering treatment. As the population continues to grow and age, the burden and complexity of CRC patients will undoubtedly increase, further emphasizing the importance of a comprehensive and multidisciplinary approach to its management.

While certain risk factors for CRC such as the male gender, smoking and processed meat consumption are well-established in available literature, other risk factors lack robust data mostly being from observational studies. Pinheiro *et al*[8] has rightly addressed controversies surrounding the efficacy of certain interventions in reducing CRC risk such as vitamin supplements and dietary fiber. In particular, the popular notion of dietary fiber being a protective factor for CRC is not supported by robust scientific evidence with several studies yielding conflicting results. In the meta-analysis by Park *et al*[9] it was found that dietary fiber intake was not significantly associated with CRC risk. Similarly, Aune *et al*[10] found no significant association between dietary fiber intake and CRC risk in both men and women.

However, health promotion campaigns in certain countries still focus on dietary fiber as a protective factor against CRC. The Dietary Guidelines for Americans has reinforced the role of diet and increasing dietary fiber intake as important determinants of CRC prevention[11]. While dietary fiber is important for digestive health, the evidence to CRC prevention is lacking. It becomes important to take a step back to reconcile new perspectives and promote scientifically backed recommendations in healthcare policies and guidelines.

The implementation of policies to promote a healthy lifestyle and diet can prove itself to be a colossal task. Initiatives that focus on diet and exercise may face resistance due to entrenched societal norms and economic disparities. Furthermore, changing behaviors often rely on individual choices which are easily influenced by complex interactions between psychological, social, economic, and environmental factors. This makes it difficult to enforce policy changes solely through government mandates. Encouraging individuals to adopt and maintain healthy behaviors will require a multifaceted approach that can adequately address the aforementioned factors. Despite these challenges, some countries have implemented successful programs to promote healthy lifestyles. For example, Finland's North Karelia Project was first implemented in 1972, focusing on reducing cardiovascular disease risk factors through community-based interventions. This included diet modification, smoking cessation, and exercise. It achieved significant reductions in cardiovascular disease mortality rates over the years, demonstrating the feasibility and effectiveness of population-level interventions[12]. This highlights the potential impact of nation-directed policies although caution must be taken to interpret their success as it often hinges on large-scale collaborative efforts across multiple stakeholders.

CRC screening is of paramount importance due to its ability to detect precancerous lesions and early-stage cancer. This can significantly reduce mortality rates if treated early[13]. Studies have consistently demonstrated the efficacy of screening modalities such as colonoscopy, fecal occult blood tests, and sigmoidoscopy in reducing both incidence and mortality rates of CRC. The European Randomized Study of Screening for Colorectal Cancer and the National Health Service Bowel Cancer Screening Program in the United Kingdom have demonstrated significant reductions in CRC mortality rates through screening programs[14,15]. Most recently, the Nordic-European Initiative on Colorectal Cancer trial revealed an 18% relative risk reduction of CRC when comparing individuals who received a screening colonoscopy to individuals who had no screening[16]. However, achieving a perfect screening program for CRC remains elusive due to various challenges. These include issues related to accessibility, adherence, and cost-effectiveness. Moreover, disparities in healthcare access and resources contribute to the level of screening uptake and effectiveness across different populations and regions.

Hence, a more disruptive way of CRC prevention needs to be devised and implemented. Perhaps inspiration can be drawn from the strategy of human papilloma virus (HPV) vaccination for cervical cancer. Just as HPV vaccination targets the viral infection central to the pathogenesis of cervical cancer, chemo-preventive agents for CRC could focus on inhibiting inflammatory pathways[17], modulating gut microbiota dysbiosis[18], or targeting key signaling pathways in gene mutations that causes malignant transformation[19]. By leveraging on these strategies and incorporating innovative approaches targeting CRC risk factors, there is potential to significantly reduce the burden of CRC and improve public

health outcomes.

Efforts in medical care have primarily been focused on the pathology of CRC. However, a holistic assessment of a patient diagnosed with CRC is essential before deciding on the subsequent medical management of their disease. This allows for the optimization of medical outcomes and provides patient-centered care. This approach considers not only the pathology of the disease but also the patient's physiological status, psychosocial needs, and personal preferences. This can translate to lower rates of unnecessary imaging tests and invasive procedures in CRC patients, leading to cost savings and better patient experiences[20]. This approach emphasizes shared decision-making, respect for patient autonomy, and tailoring treatment plans to align with patients' goals and preferences. It has been shown that comprehensive assessment and tailored management plans can result in better patient outcomes and satisfaction[21]. Multidisciplinary team meetings, where patient cases are discussed comprehensively can lead to improved decision-making and reduced mortality rates in CRC patients[22]. Furthermore, in an increasingly aging population with longer life expectancies, care will become increasingly complex due to the higher prevalence of comorbidities and the need for individualized care plans. Global life expectancy has increased steadily, and this highlights the importance of addressing the unique needs of patients in CRC management.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the future of CRC surgery has only just begun, and it is imperative for healthcare professionals to be equipped with the latest knowledge so that they can work in a transdisciplinary team that aspires to deliver the best possible care. This review article has summarized the key issues and principles in appreciating the context of treating CRC in the elderly. We hope that this article can serve as a platform to stimulate more research and collaboration in the near future.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Lu JD and Tan KY contributed equally to this work. All authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to highlight.

Country/Territory of origin: Singapore

ORCID number: Kok Yang Tan 0000-0003-3077-718X.

S-Editor: Zhang L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Yuan YY

REFERENCES

1 **Ferlay J**, Colombet M, Soerjomataram I, Parkin DM, Piñeros M, Znaor A, Bray F. Cancer statistics for the year 2020: An overview. *Int J Cancer* 2021 [PMID: 33818764 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.33588]

2 **Global Burden of Disease Cancer Collaboration**, Fitzmaurice C, Allen C, Barber RM, Barregard L, Bhutta ZA, Brenner H, Dicker DJ, Chimed-Orchir O, Dandona R, Dandona L, Fleming T, Forouzanfar MH, Hancock J, Hay RJ, Hunter-Merrill R, Huynh C, Hosgood HD, Johnson CO, Jonas JB, Khubchandani J, Kumar GA, Kutz M, Lan Q, Larson HJ, Liang X, Lim SS, Lopez AD, MacIntyre MF, Marczak L, Marquez N, Mokdad AH, Pinho C, Pourmalek F, Salomon JA, Sanabria JR, Sandar L, Sartorius B, Schwartz SM, Shackelford KA, Shibuya K, Stanaway J, Steiner C, Sun J, Takahashi K, Vollset SE, Vos T, Wagner JA, Wang H, Westerman R, Zeeb H, Zoeckler L, Abd-Allah F, Ahmed MB, Alabed S, Alam NK, Aldhahri SF, Alem G, Alemayohu MA, Ali R, Al-Raddadi R, Amare A, Amoako Y, Artaman A, Asayesh H, Atnafu N, Awasthi A, Saleem HB, Barac A, Bedi N, Bensenor I, Berhane A, Bernabé E, Betsu B, Binagwaho A, Boneya D, Campos-Nonato I, Castañeda-Orjuela C, Catalá-López F, Chiang P, Chibueze C, Chitheer A, Choi JY, Cowie B, Damtew S, das Neves J, Dey S, Dharmaratne S, Dhillon P, Ding E, Driscoll T, Ekwueme D, Endries AY, Farvid M, Farzadfar F, Fernandes J, Fischer F, G/Hiwot TT, Gebru A, Gopalani S, Hailu A, Horino M, Horita N, Husseini A, Huybrechts I, Inoue M, Islami F, Jakovljevic M, James S, Javanbakht M, Jee SH, Kasaeian A, Kedir MS, Khader YS, Khang YH, Kim D, Leigh J, Linn S, Lunevicius R, El Razek HMA, Malekzadeh R, Malta DC, Marcenes W, Markos D, Melaku YA, Meles KG, Mendoza W, Mengiste DT, Meretoja TJ, Miller TR, Mohammad KA, Mohammadi A, Mohammed S, Moradi-Lakeh M, Nagel G, Nand D, Le Nguyen Q, Nolte S, Ogbo FA, Oladimeji KE, Oren E, Pa M, Park EK, Pereira DM, Plass D, Qorbani M, Radfar A, Rafay A, Rahman M, Rana SM, Søreide K, Satpathy M, Sawhney M, Sepanlou SG, Shaikh MA, She J, Shiue I, Shore HR, Shrime MG, So S, Soneji S, Stathopoulou V, Stroumpoulis K, Sufiyan MB, Sykes BL, Tabarés-Seisdedos R, Tadese F, Tedla BA, Tessema GA, Thakur JS, Tran BX, Ukwaja KN, Uzochukwu BSC, Vlassov VV, Weiderpass E, Wubshet Terefe M, Yebyo HG, Yimam HH, Yonemoto N, Younis MZ, Yu C,

Zaidi Z, Zaki MES, Zenebe ZM, Murray CJL, Naghavi M. Global, Regional, and National Cancer Incidence, Mortality, Years of Life Lost, Years Lived With Disability, and Disability-Adjusted Life-years for 32 Cancer Groups, 1990 to 2015: A Systematic Analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study. *JAMA Oncol* 2017; **3**: 524-548 [PMID: 27918777 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2016.5688]

3 **Doubeni CA**, Laiyemo AO, Major JM, Schootman M, Lian M, Park Y, Graubard BI, Hollenbeck AR, Sinha R. Socioeconomic status and the risk of colorectal cancer: an analysis of more than a half million adults in the National Institutes of Health-AARP Diet and Health Study. *Cancer* 2012; **118**: 3636-3644 [PMID: 22898918 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.26677]

4 **Doubeni CA**, Major JM, Laiyemo AO, Schootman M, Zauber AG, Hollenbeck AR, Sinha R, Allison J. Contribution of behavioral risk factors and obesity to socioeconomic differences in colorectal cancer incidence. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2012; **104**: 1353-1362 [PMID: 22952311 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djs346]

5 **Klabunde CN**, Cronin KA, Breen N, Waldron WR, Ambs AH, Nadel MR. Trends in colorectal cancer test use among vulnerable populations in the United States. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2011; **20**: 1611-1621 [PMID: 21653643 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0220]

6 **Siegel RL**, Wagle NS, Cercek A, Smith RA, Jemal A. Colorectal cancer statistics, 2023. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2023; **73**: 233-254 [PMID: 36856579 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21772]

7 **Zaki TA**, Singal AG, May FP, Murphy CC. Increasing Incidence Rates of Colorectal Cancer at Ages 50-54 Years. *Gastroenterology* 2022; **162**: 964-965.e3 [PMID: 34757141 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.10.039]

8 **Pinheiro M**, Moreira DN, Ghidini M. Colon and rectal cancer: An emergent public health problem. *World J Gastroenterol* 2024; **30**: 644-651 [PMID: 38515957 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v30.i7.644]

9 **Park Y**, Hunter DJ, Spiegelman D, Bergkvist L, Berrino F, van den Brandt PA, Buring JE, Colditz GA, Freudenheim JL, Fuchs CS, Giovannucci E, Goldbohm RA, Graham S, Harnack L, Hartman AM, Jacobs DR Jr, Kato I, Krogh V, Leitzmann MF, McCullough ML, Miller AB, Pietinen P, Rohan TE, Schatzkin A, Willett WC, Wolk A, Zeleniuch-Jacquotte A, Zhang SM, Smith-Warner SA. Dietary fiber intake and risk of colorectal cancer: a pooled analysis of prospective cohort studies. *JAMA* 2005; **294**: 2849-2857 [PMID: 16352792 DOI: 10.1001/jama.294.22.2849]

10 **Aune D**, Chan DS, Lau R, Vieira R, Greenwood DC, Kampman E, Norat T. Dietary fibre, whole grains, and risk of colorectal cancer: systematic review and dose-response meta-analysis of prospective studies. *BMJ* 2011; **343**: d6617 [PMID: 22074852 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.d6617]

11 Evaluating the Process to Develop the Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 2020-2025: Final Report. Washington (DC): National Academies Press (US); 2022-Nov-17 [PMID: 36996271]

12 **Puska P**, Ståhl T. Health in all policies-the Finnish initiative: background, principles, and current issues. *Annu Rev Public Health* 2010; **31**: 315-28 3 p following 328 [PMID: 20070201 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.publhealth.012809.103658]

13 **Winawer SJ**, Zauber AG, Ho MN, O'Brien MJ, Gottlieb LS, Sternberg SS, Waye JD, Schapiro M, Bond JH, Panish JF. Prevention of colorectal cancer by colonoscopic polypectomy. The National Polyp Study Workgroup. *N Engl J Med* 1993; **329**: 1977-1981 [PMID: 8247072 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199312303292701]

14 **Segnan N**, Armaroli P, Bonelli L, Risio M, Sciallero S, Zappa M, Andreoni B, Arrigoni A, Bisanti L, Casella C, Crosta C, Falcini F, Ferrero F, Giacomin A, Giuliani O, Santarelli A, Visioli CB, Zanetti R, Atkin WS, Senore C; SCORE Working Group. Once-only sigmoidoscopy in colorectal cancer screening: follow-up findings of the Italian Randomized Controlled Trial--SCORE. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2011; **103**: 1310-1322 [PMID: 21852264 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djr284]

15 **Logan RF**, Patnick J, Nickerson C, Coleman L, Rutter MD, von Wagner C; English Bowel Cancer Screening Evaluation Committee. Outcomes of the Bowel Cancer Screening Programme (BCSP) in England after the first 1 million tests. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1439-1446 [PMID: 22156981 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-300843]

16 **Bretthauer M**, Løberg M, Wieszczy P, Kalager M, Emilsson L, Garborg K, Rupinski M, Dekker E, Spaander M, Bugajski M, Holme Ø, Zauber AG, Pilonis ND, Mroz A, Kuipers EJ, Shi J, Hernán MA, Adami HO, Regula J, Hoff G, Kaminski MF; NordICC Study Group. Effect of Colonoscopy Screening on Risks of Colorectal Cancer and Related Death. *N Engl J Med* 2022; **387**: 1547-1556 [PMID: 36214590 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2208375]

17 **Mariani F**, Sena P, Roncucci L. Inflammatory pathways in the early steps of colorectal cancer development. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 9716-9731 [PMID: 25110410 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i29.9716]

18 **Fong W**, Li Q, Yu J. Gut microbiota modulation: a novel strategy for prevention and treatment of colorectal cancer. *Oncogene* 2020; **39**: 4925-4943 [PMID: 32514151 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-020-1341-1]

19 **Koveitypour Z**, Panahi F, Vakilian M, Peymani M, Seyed Forootan F, Nasr Esfahani MH, Ghaedi K. Signaling pathways involved in colorectal cancer progression. *Cell Biosci* 2019; **9**: 97 [PMID: 31827763 DOI: 10.1186/s13578-019-0361-4]

20 **Bertakis KD**, Azari R. Patient-centered care is associated with decreased health care utilization. *J Am Board Fam Med* 2011; **24**: 229-239 [PMID: 21551394 DOI: 10.3122/jabfm.2011.03.100170]

21 **Kuipers SJ**, Cramm JM, Nieboer AP. The importance of patient-centered care and co-creation of care for satisfaction with care and physical and social well-being of patients with multi-morbidity in the primary care setting. *BMC Health Serv Res* 2019; **19**: 13 [PMID: 30621688 DOI: 10.1186/s12913-018-3818-y]

22 **Fehervari M**, Hamrang-Yousefi S, Fadel MG, Mills SC, Warren OJ, Tekkis PP, Kontovounisios C. A systematic review of colorectal multidisciplinary team meetings: an international comparison. *BJS Open* 2021; **5** [PMID: 34013317 DOI: 10.1093/bjsopen/zrab044]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 603-613

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.603

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1: A novel antitumor target in gastrointestinal cancers

Zheng-Long Wu, Ying Wang, Xiao-Yuan Jia, Yi-Gang Wang, Hui Wang

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade B
Novelty: Grade A
Creativity or Innovation: Grade B
Scientific Significance: Grade A

P-Reviewer: Dharmawansa KVS, Canada

Received: January 3, 2024
Revised: March 20, 2024
Accepted: April 17, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Zheng-Long Wu, Ying Wang, Xiao-Yuan Jia, Yi-Gang Wang, Xinyuan Institute of Medicine and Biotechnology, College of Life Sciences and Medicine, Zhejiang Sci-Tech University, Hangzhou 310018, Zhejiang Province, China

Zheng-Long Wu, Hui Wang, Department of Oncology, Zhejiang Xiaoshan Hospital, Hangzhou 311201, Zhejiang Province, China

Corresponding author: Yi-Gang Wang, PhD, Professor, College of Life Sciences and Medicine, Zhejiang Sci-Tech University, No. 928 2nd Street, Qiantang District, Hangzhou 310018, Zhejiang Province, China. wangyigang43@163.com

Abstract

Receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1 (ROR1) is a member of the type I receptor tyrosine kinase family. ROR1 is pivotal in embryonic development and cancer, and serves as a biomarker and therapeutic target. It has soluble and membrane-bound subtypes, with the latter highly expressed in tumors. ROR1 is conserved throughout evolution and may play a role in the development of gastrointestinal cancer through multiple signaling pathways and molecular mechanisms. Studies suggest that overexpression of ROR1 may increase tumor invasiveness and metastasis. Additionally, ROR1 may regulate the cell cycle, stem cell characteristics, and interact with other signaling pathways to affect cancer progression. This review explores the structure, expression and role of ROR1 in the development of gastrointestinal cancers. It discusses current antitumor strategies, outlining challenges and prospects for treatment.

Key Words: Receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1; Gastrointestinal cancers; Therapeutic target; Molecular mechanisms; Antitumor strategies

Core Tip: Delve into a comprehensive review spotlighting receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1 (ROR1) pivotal involvement in gastrointestinal cancer advancement and its promising prospects as an anti-tumor remedy. Explore pivotal cellular pathways governing ROR1 regulation and pertinent insights into existing commercial therapeutic offerings. Emphasizing ROR1's crucial role in gastrointestinal cancer treatment, this review offers a nuanced blend of historical context and scientific insight, illuminating the dynamic landscape of this evolving field.

Citation: Wu ZL, Wang Y, Jia XY, Wang YG, Wang H. Receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1: A novel antitumor target in gastrointestinal cancers. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 603-613
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/603.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.603

INTRODUCTION

Receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor (ROR) 1 and ROR2 belong to the ROR subfamily of type I receptor tyrosine kinase (RTK) family. They were first identified in human neuroblastoma cells in 1992 and are termed orphan receptors as their ligands are not known[1-3]. The two proteins share 58% sequence identity. ROR1 has recently been shown to be involved in embryonic development and cancer. It is recognized as a diagnostic biomarker and is a research hotspot for the targeted treatment of various malignancies. ROR1 has two subtypes; an intact membrane receptor and a truncated variant. The truncated versions include a membrane-bound form that lacks an extracellular domain and a soluble form that contains only the extracellular structure[4]. Expression of the soluble isoform does not increase in cancer patients, showing minimal or undetectable levels in the serum that are not dependent on disease progression or severity, whereas expression of the intact membrane-bound isoform increases significantly[5].

ROR1 proteins are found in a variety of species. Drosophila melanogaster has a protein called Dror, which resembles an RTK. The kinase and structural extracellular domains of Dror display 61% and 36% sequence identity, respectively, with the corresponding domains of human ROR1[6], while human and mouse ROR1 are 97% identical. This evolutionary conservation of ROR family proteins indicates the importance of their physiological functions during embryonic and organ development. Many recent studies on ROR1 have demonstrated its aberrant expression in various forms of cancer. Abnormal expression of ROR1 was first observed in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)[2,7]. Although specific disease-related mutations have yet to be identified in ROR1, it has become a widely studied therapeutic target for localized ischemia, diabetes, and malignancies[8-11].

Gastrointestinal cancers, including liver, gastric, colorectal, and pancreatic cancer, are some of the most frequently diagnosed tumors and contribute significantly to cancer-associated mortality in China and worldwide. Overexpression of ROR1 is seen in many gastrointestinal cancers, where it is linked with poor prognosis, indicating the essential roles of ROR1 in these tumors. This paper reviews the structure and expression patterns of ROR1 in gastrointestinal cancers, as well as its involvement in cancer development. Current antitumor strategies for gastrointestinal cancers involving ROR1 are discussed and the challenges and prospects in treating these diseases are summarized.

STRUCTURE AND EXPRESSION PATTERNS OF ROR1

ROR1 is a type I transmembrane protein, 937 residues in length, with a molecular weight of approximately 105 kDa. The protein includes extracellular, transmembrane, and intracellular regions (Figure 1). The extracellular region includes several extracellular domains, specifically, immunoglobulin-like (Ig-like), frizzled (FZD), and Kringle (KD) domains. FZD is a cell membrane receptor for the secreted glycoprotein Wnt. It contains a cysteine-rich domain located at the N terminus outside the cell that can bind to Wnt. The FZD domain regulates nonclassical Wnt signaling through interaction with its ligand, Wnt5a, while KD mediates interactions between ROR1 and other receptors, including ROR2. The intracellular domains include three domain types; one tyrosine kinase (TK)-like and two serine/threonine-rich domains, together with a proline-rich domain. The serine/threonine-rich domains bind to bridging proteins such as 14-3-3ζ to prevent apoptosis[12], while the proline-rich domain binds to Src homology 3 (SH3) domains in various proteins, such as hematopoietic lineage cell-specific protein 1 (HS1), dedicator of cytokinesis protein 2 (DOCK2), and cortactin, to promote cell migration and proliferation[13-15]. However, although ROR1 is an RTK, the function of its TK domain remains essentially unknown.

ROR1 expression is primarily limited to embryonic development with low levels seen in postnatal tissue. Nevertheless, some normal tissues, including adipose tissue, endocrine glands, and the gastrointestinal tract, display high levels of ROR1 expression[16,17]. ROR1 knockout is fatal in the embryo, providing evidence of its crucial role in embryonic development[18]. In contrast to the relatively low or minimal expression observed in normal tissues, ROR1 expression increased markedly in a variety of hematological cancers and solid tumors, including CLL, breast cancer, melanoma, and gastrointestinal cancers, such as colorectal cancers and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas[19-22]. This feature suggests that ROR1 may be a promising candidate for cancer therapy.

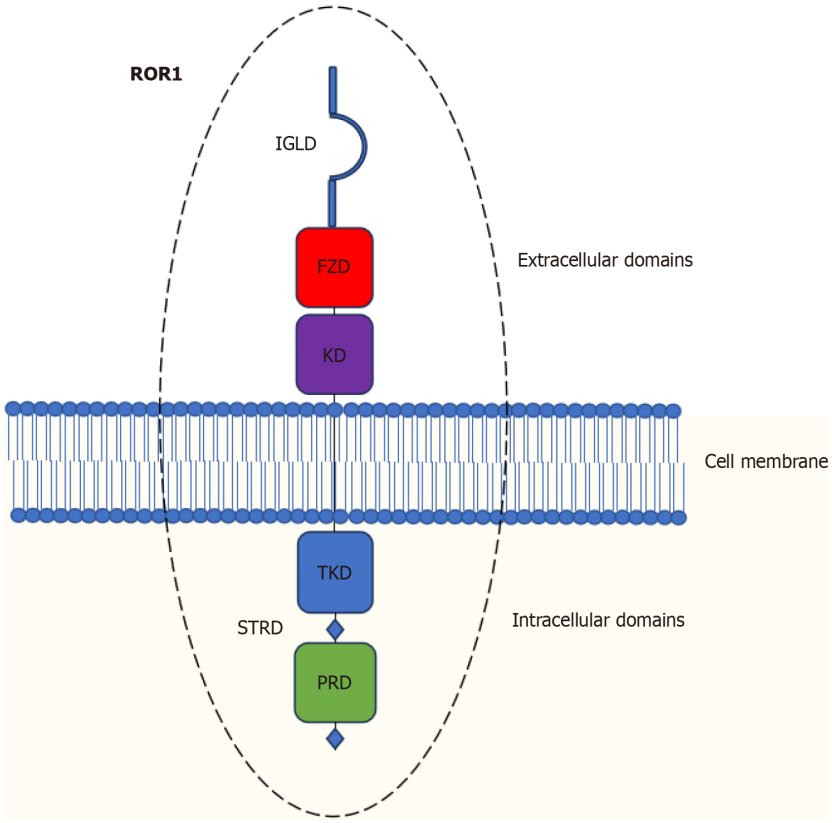


Figure 1 Diagram of the receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1 domain structure. IG: Ig-like domain; FZD: Frizzled domain; KD: Kringle domain; TKD: Tyrosine kinase domain; S/T: Serine/Threonine-rich domain; PRD: Proline-rich domain.

REGULATORY MECHANISMS OF SIGNALING PATHWAYS INVOLVED IN ROR1

Aberrant expression of ROR1 protein in CLL cells was identified using monoclonal antibodies[19]. These authors also found that Wnt5a bound specifically to ROR1 to promote cancer growth and survival, thus ending the orphan status of ROR1. Wnt5a has been shown to activate the non-classical Wnt pathway through interaction with the FZD domain of ROR1[18,23], indicating the potential importance of ROR1 in various biological processes through non-canonical Wnt signaling. Wnt5a is also involved in phosphorylation of the Nuclear Factor-kappa B (NF-κB) subunit p65, activating NF-κB signaling in cancer cells, and thus promoting tumorigenesis, the epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT), and metastasis. NF-κB signaling is also closely linked with both inflammation and immune regulation, and shows significant activation in various tumor types.

The Wnt5a pathway is a vital component of the Wnt signaling pathway family and plays a significant role in cancer progression. It affects cell behaviors such as proliferation, differentiation, and migration, which can impact cancer development. Dysregulation of this pathway has been linked to various cancers. By regulating cell cycle and migration, it restricts cancer cell growth and invasion. Additionally, it may impact cancer stem cell characteristics and immune responses within the tumor microenvironment. Furthermore, it interacts with neighboring tissues, promotes angiogenesis, and induces inflammation. Its functions differ among various types of cancer, leading to investigations into its regulatory mechanisms as potential therapeutic targets.

The FZD gene family includes seven transmembrane proteins that are receptors for Wnt ligands. FZD5 appears to be the receptor for Wnt5a. As shown in Figure 2, Wnt5a can activate both FZD5 and ROR1, leading to activation of dishevelled 2/3 (Dvl2/3) and protein kinase B (Akt) phosphorylation. This leads to Akt-mediated phosphorylation of IκB kinase α (IKKα) and activation of IκB kinase (IKK), inducing Inhibitor of kappa B α (IκBα) degradation and NF-κB subunit p65 phosphorylation. After phosphorylation, p65 translocates to the nucleus where it promotes the transcription of various genes including Cyclin D1, cellular myelocytomatosis (c-Myc), matrix metalloproteinase-9, and Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor, as well as Wnt5a to induce an autonomous feedback loop. Continued stimulation of the ROR1/Akt/p65 pathway within this loop further promotes the production of proinflammatory factors such as interleukin-6 (IL-6) and chemokines such as CCL2[24]. Further research found a positive correlation between ROR1 expression and increased transcription of Yes-associated protein/Transcriptional co-Activator with PDZ-binding motif (YAP/TAZ), promoting both tumorigenesis and chemotherapy resistance[25,26]. Complexation of Wnt5a with ROR1/FZD promotes binding between G protein subunit alpha 12/13 (Gα12/13) and the transforming protein Ras homolog gene family, member A (RhoA), inhibiting the activity of large tumor suppressor kinase 1/2 (Lats1/2) and stimulating YAP/TAZ dephosphorylation and nuclear translocation. Gα12/13 belongs to the gα protein family, where it differs from other members of the family, G protein subunit alpha s (Gαs), G protein subunit alpha i (Gαi), and G protein subunit alpha q (Gαq), and modulates cytoskeletal reorganization and morphological changes in the cell by activating the small

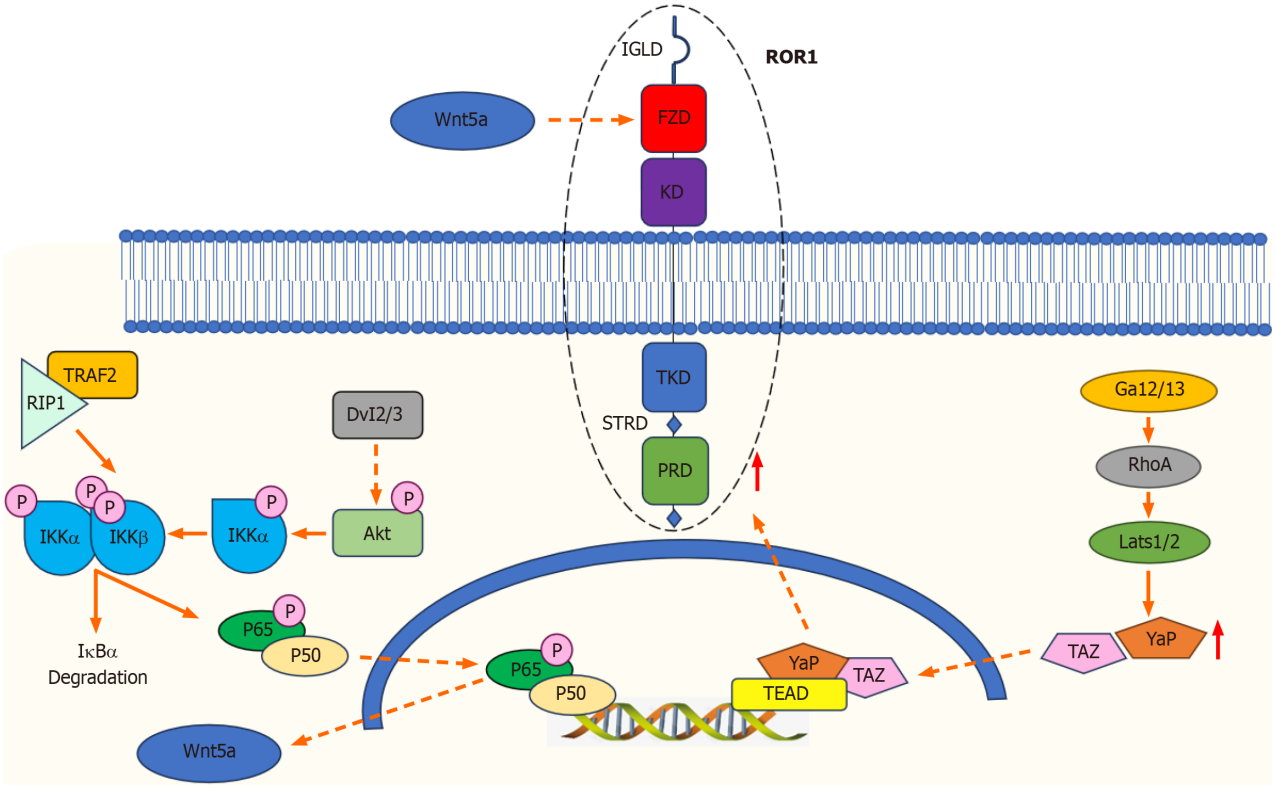


Figure 2 Signaling pathways regulated by receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1. Dvl2/3: Dishevelled 2/3; Akt: Protein kinase B; Ikkα: IκB kinase α; IκBα: Inhibitor of kappa B α; p65: Nuclear factor NF-kappa-B p65 subunit; RhoA: Ras homolog gene family, member A; Gα12/13: G protein subunit alpha 12/13; Lats1/2: Large tumor suppressor kinase 1/2; YAP/TAZ: Yes-associated protein/Transcriptional co-Activator with PDZ-binding motif. Binding of Wnt5a to receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1 (ROR1) induces Dvl2/3 activation and Akt phosphorylation, leading to phosphorylation of Ikkα, activation of the IκB kinase complex, degradation of IκBα, and p65 phosphorylation. Subsequently, p65 is transferred to the nucleus where it promotes the transcription of specific genes, including Wnt5a, producing an autonomous feedback loop. Binding between Wnt5a and the ROR1/frizzled complex leads to activation of RhoA *via* Gα12/13. This activation inhibits Lats1/2 activity, leading to the dephosphorylation and nuclear translocation of YAP/TAZ. The binding of YAP/TAZ to transcription enhanced association domain increases the transcription of genes linked to tumorigenesis and stemness while increased levels of YAP/TAZ enhance ROR1 expression.

Guanosine Triphosphatase (GTPase) Rho. Gα12/13 is also involved in processes such as cell proliferation, migration, and apoptosis. Nuclear translocation of YAP/TAZ, together with transcription enhanced association domain (TEAD), increases the transcription of genes associated with stem cell renewal, proliferation, and tumorigenesis. The upregulation of ROR1 expression is, in turn, stimulated by increased YAP/TAZ transcription.

ROLE OF ROR1 IN GASTROINTESTINAL CANCERS

The mechanisms of ROR1 action in diverse malignancies, encompassing gastrointestinal tumors such as liver, gastric, colorectal, and pancreatic cancer, exhibit heterogeneity. Distinct signaling pathways or processes influenced by ROR1 may be implicated in each specific cancer type. Therefore, it is necessary to discuss the function of ROR1 in these cancers individually.

ROR1 and liver cancer

Liver cancer is one of the six most common cancers worldwide and falls into three main types, namely, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma, and mixed cell carcinoma[27]. HCC is the most prevalent and lethal variety, representing approximately 90% of all liver cancers. Liver tumors may also be derived from metastasis of other malignancies, such as lung tumors. Due to its high mortality rate and ease of metastasis, HCC is a subject of significant interest in cancer research[28].

A study by Cetin *et al*[29] assessed ROR1 in HCC, demonstrating its presence in both human and mouse cells, without limitation to metastatic or mesenchymal cell lines. Induction of EMT by transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) reduced ROR1 levels, while ROR1 knockdown inhibited both the proliferation and migration of HCC cells and increased resistance to apoptosis. Chemotherapeutic agent uptake was modified in ROR1 knockdown epithelial-type HCC cells, leading to resistance to chemotherapy-induced apoptosis. ROR1 has been shown to promote HCC progression through the modulation of various pathways, and changes in ROR1 expression may be useful in diagnosis and prognostic prediction. Meng *et al*[30] reported that ROR1 expression is substantially increased in acid-treated cancer cells and significantly promotes invasion and migration of HCC. ROR1 knockdown through siRNA successfully inhibited acid-

induced tumor cell migration, invasion, and EMT. Nevertheless, the underlying regulatory actions of ROR1 in HCC are not yet clear.

ROR1 and gastric cancer

Gastric cancer (GC) is a heterogeneous disease with a high mortality rate. It is known that infection with *Helicobacter pylori* is both necessary and insufficient for the development of GC[31] which appears to involve a multifactorial and multistep pathogenesis[32].

There is limited information on ROR1 in GC. Kotoh *et al*[33] found an association between Wnt5a and GC invasion and metastasis, showing that Wnt5a bound to FZD/ROR1 and was linked to various signaling pathways including β-catenin-TCF/LEF, Dishevelled–RhoA–Rho-associated protein kinase (DVL–RhoA–ROCK), and mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase kinase 7–nuclear factor-B (MAP3K7–NF-κB) in specific contexts. ROR1 also associates with c-Src, promoting its phosphorylation. C-Src is a non-RTK and known oncogene that has been linked to the development of numerous human cancers, including colon, gastric, lung, breast, and prostate cancers. Once activated, c-Src can regulate a variety of processes, both normal and cancer-associated, including cell survival, proliferation, motility, differentiation, and angiogenesis[34,35].

ROR1 and colorectal cancer

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is among the most prevalent cancer types globally, ranking fifth in incidence in China. Advanced CRC is associated with both recurrence and drug resistance, reducing patient survival. Thus, investigation of the mechanisms underlying CRC is important to improve survival and develop new drugs. Zhou and colleagues investigated expression of ROR1 in CRC[36], observing markedly increased levels in CRC tissues and in approximately 94% of patients with CRC. However, the molecular mechanisms underlying these increases remain unknown.

Wnt signaling is closely associated with regulation of morphogenesis during embryonic development and repair processes. The Wnt ligands are key to these pathways, and are known to bind different receptors, including proteins of the FZD family and ROR1. The interactions trigger downstream cascades involving multiple pathways to influence the arrangement of the cytoskeleton, transcription of genes associated with proliferation and cell growth, and the behavior of intracellular organelles. Dysregulated Wnt signaling has been linked to various malignancies, including CRC, through the modulation of cells associated with the tumor microenvironment (TME)[37].

ROR1 and pancreatic cancer

Pancreatic cancer is an especially lethal form of cancer. Despite significant progress in elucidating its molecular pathology, the prognosis remains extremely poor, mostly due to treatment resistance and the formation of distant metastases in the early stages of the disease[28]. Therefore, uncovering the underlying molecular mechanisms of pancreatic cancer to create new targeted therapeutic strategies remains a pressing research priority.

Yamazaki *et al*[38] demonstrated that ROR1 promotes the proliferation of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) by activating E2F *via* c-Myc and inducing expression of aurora kinase B. It was also found that transcription of ROR1 was dependent on the binding of YAP/BRD4 to its promoter region. Prevention of this binding reduced ROR1 expression and inhibited PDAC growth. These findings suggest that increased levels of ROR1 are closely involved in tumorigenesis, highlighting its importance in PDAC progression and its potential as a target for treating the cancer.

ANTITUMOR STRATEGIES TARGETING ROR1 IN GASTROINTESTINAL CANCERS

There has been an increased focus on ROR1 as a potential antitumor target for gastrointestinal cancers, involving various therapeutic approaches and ongoing clinical trials and preclinical studies. These include the use of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs), antibody–drug conjugates (ADCs), bispecific antibodies, small molecule inhibitors, and chimeric antigen receptor (CAR)-T cell therapies (Table 1).

Anti-ROR1 monoclonal antibodies

The application of anti-ROR1 mAbs to block binding between the receptor and the Wnt5a ligand prevents activation of downstream signaling and activates the immune system to promote removal of tumor cells[39]. Zilovertamab, also known as cirmtuzumab or UC-961, is an mAb targeting ROR1. Zilovertamab binding to ROR1 blocks Wnt5a signaling, thus inhibiting tumorigenic behavior, such as cell growth and survival, and inducing differentiation. This mAb has shown significant antitumor efficacy against both hematological and solid malignancies, such as GC and pancreatic cancer, in Phase I clinical trials, and is currently the only antibody on the market that has undergone clinical evaluations [40]. A phase I/II trial of a combination of zilovertamab and paclitaxel for treating breast cancer is currently underway.

Chen *et al*[24] reported that the Wnt5a/ROR1 axis can activate the NF-κB pathway in tumor cells, resulting in the production of interleukin-6 and signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 phosphorylation. Zilovertamab has the potential to inhibit these processes. According to Hasan *et al*[15], Wnt5a promotes complexation between ROR1 and DOCK2, leading to the activation of Rac1/2. Silencing of DOCK2 specifically reduces Wnt5a-mediated activation of Rac1/2 and tumor cell proliferation. The proline-rich domain (PRD) of ROR1 has been implicated in the Wnt5a interaction with DOCK2 and activation of Rac1/2 in MEC1 CLL cells. This effect is blocked by zilovertamab, which also has the advantages of having a long half-life in the plasma and no dose-limiting toxicity. The use of this antibody showed reductions in the activities of RhoA and HS1, while transcriptome analysis indicates reductions in the expression of stemness genes in CLL *in vivo*. It is apparent that zilovertamab is both safe and effective for the inhibition of ROR1 in

Table 1 Receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor 1-targetd therapies in clinical trials or preclinical studies

Therapy types	Therapy drugs	Indications	ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier/Ref.
mAb	Zilovertamab	Gastric cancer Pancreatic cancer	[42]
ADC	VLS-101	Solid tumor	NCT04504916
	LCB71		NCT05279300
	NBE-002		NCT04441099
	miR-29b		[47]
	OSU-2S		[48]
Bispecific antibody	R11×v9-BiAb	Solid tumor	[50]
	NVG-111		NCT04763083
	SFG.ROR1-BiTE	Pancreatic cancer	[51]
Small-molecule inhibitors	KAN0439834	Pancreatic cancer	[54]
	KAN04415711C		[55]
	miR-27b-3p	Gastric cancer	[57]

mAb: Monoclonal antibodies; ADC: Antibody drug conjugate.

various tumor cells[40].

Antibody-drug conjugates

ADCs involve linkage between mAbs and small cytotoxic molecules *via* specific chemical linkers. ADCs targeting ROR1 are able to transfer cytotoxic agents and regulatory RNAs to ROR1-expressing tumor cells.

VLS-101 (MK-2140) is an ADC consisting of a lead antibody to effectively target ROR1, for treating hematological malignancies and solid tumors. VLS-101 represents a combination of zilovertamab, a lysyl iminohexene-valine-citrulline p-aminobenzoate linker, and a cytotoxic agent monomethyl auristatin E (MMAE) that targets microtubules. Within cells, MMAE is released from the linker to block microtubule polymerization, thus adversely affecting mitosis and cell division [41]. The drug also safely promotes tumor regression in patient-derived xenograft models previously found to be resistant to CAR-T cell, ibrutinib, and/or venetoclax treatment[42]. These findings provide valuable insights into the increasing clinical demand for VLS-101 in gastrointestinal cancers.

LCB71 (CS5001) is an ADC based on an mAb that targets ROR1. LCB71 has a distinctive design involving a unique β-glucosidic acid linker and a pyrrolobenzodiazepine (PBD) pre-toxin dimer. Both the linker and the pretoxin are cleaved by lysosomal β-glucuronidase, an enzyme significantly overexpressed in many types of cancer cells. Thus, LCB71 can eliminate cancerous cells after arrival at the tumor site and cleavage of the linker to release the PBD pre-toxin, which is subsequently activated within the tumor cell. The dual control mechanism of the linker plus precursor toxin resolves typical toxicity issues associated with traditional PBD loads, resulting in an improved safety profile. LCB71 has shown notable dose-dependent antitumor activity in several xenograft tumor models of condylomatous lymphoma and breast cancer and is thus a promising drug candidate with potential for precision therapy in both hematological and solid malignant tumors expressing high levels of ROR1. The ADC NBE-002 is composed of a humanized antibody, huXBR1-402, conjugated to the anthracycline derivative, PNU-159682. HuXBR1-402 is a chimeric rabbit/human mAb identified from a rabbit antibody library using phage display. NBE-002 has been shown to be effective in xenograft models of various human tumors[43]. The drug is currently in a clinical Phase I study. Chiang *et al*[44] connected an anti-ROR1 mAb to a regulatory miRNA (miR-29b). This ADC treatment reduced the expression of the miR-29 targets, DNA methyltransferase (DNMT) 1 and DNMT3A, in cells expressing ROR1. It also led to alterations in global DNA methylation patterns, downregulation of SP1, and upregulation of p21. Another ADC used an mAb against ROR1 linked to nanoparticles containing OSU-2S, a sphingosine analog with anti-tumor capabilities, that activated protein phosphatase 2A and induced SHP1 phosphorylation and nuclear translocation[45], resulting in apoptosis.

Bispecific antibody

Bispecific antibodies (BiAbs) are synthetic antibodies created through cell fusion or recombinant DNA technology. They are formed by two single-chain antibody fragments, or single-chain fragment variable (scFvs), together with different variable regions composed of both heavy and light chains and a common constant region, or Fc. Bispecific T-cell conjugates (BiTes) are fusion proteins composed of two separate scFvs without an Fc. One arm can bind to the Kringle domain on ROR1 while the other interacts with the CD3 subunit of the T cell receptor, thus recruiting polyclonal T cells to the site of the tumor. BiTEs do not rely on antigen presentation and can activate T-cell binding, resulting in the killing of neighboring target cells. Both BiAbs and BiTes can bind simultaneously to two different antigens or epitopes on the same antigen. Due to their specificity and bifunctionality, the use of BiAbs and BiTes is a trending research topic in antibody

engineering and has a broad range of applications in tumor therapy and autoimmune diseases.

Qi *et al*[46] co-conjugated multiple anti-ROR1 single-chain antibodies to a single-chain antibody against CD3 with glycosylated IgG1-Fc, generating various BiAbs. They found that targeting scFv using ROR1 with the proximal epitope R11 of the membrane was the most effective one for recruiting T cells to ROR1-positive solid cancer cell lines. This BiAb exhibited promising antitumor activity both in vitro and *in vivo*. In a similar investigation, Wang *et al*[47] also used a BiAb composed of an scFv and Fc that targeted both ROR1 and CD3; this was termed R11×v9-biAb. When tested on multiple ROR1-positive solid cancer cell lines, the observed cytotoxicity was found to be dependent on the R11×v9-biAb dosage. The BiAb targeted ROR1-positive cancerous cells, induced tumor cell death, and recruited significant numbers of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells to the tumor through the secretion of T-cell-derived proinflammatory factors and promoting perforin production by granzyme B and CD8+ T cells.

NVG-111 is a unique humanized BiTE recognizing both ROR1 and CD3, and is composed of tandem scFvs against ROR1 and CD3. NVG-111 is the first BiAb that utilized the inherent cytotoxicity of T cells. Ongoing clinical trials of NVG-111 have shown promising results in both CLL and solid tumors, with favorable cytotoxicity[48]. Another bispecific T-cell splicer, SFG. ROR1-BITE, includes scFvs targeting the cysteine-rich coiled-coil structural domain of ROR1 and CD3, and showed strong cytotoxicity against pancreatic cancer cells expressing ROR1 at low concentrations, as well as significant tumor reduction in a mouse model of pancreatic tumors[49].

Small-molecule inhibitors of ROR1

The lack of clearly defined kinase activity in ROR1 has limited the identification of small-molecule inhibitors that could target this activity. Although some catalytic activity was observed in immunoprecipitated ROR1 suggesting the possibility of autophosphorylation *in vivo*, this was found to be negligible[50,51].

Nevertheless, Hojjat-Farsangi *et al*[52] identified a promising inhibitor, KAN0439834, against ROR1 by screening a library of 110000 small molecules. This compound targeted the TK domain, preventing phosphorylation of ROR1 by Wnt5a and thus blocking the activation of downstream proteins such as Src, Akt, protein kinase C, and MAPK. Further research demonstrated that KAN0439834 was more effective in inducing apoptosis in cancer cells than mAbs with a potency equivalent to that of venetoclax, an inhibitor of Bcl-2 used for the treatment of patients with CLL. Clinical trials have also shown that combinations of KAN0439834 with erlotinib and ibrutinib, small-molecule inhibitors of epidermal growth factor receptor and Bruton's tyrosine kinase, act synergistically in the treatment of patients with pancreatic cancer [53]. The same group screened KAN04415711C, a second-generation compound targeting ROR1, which was found to be effective against tumors in a zebrafish model[54]. KAN04415711C was also effective in vitro when combined with venetoclax. Its mechanism of action, however, requires further investigation.

ROR1-targeted CAR-T cell therapy

CAR-T therapy involves the transfer of structural domains that specifically recognize antigens and genetic material promoting T cell activation signals into T-cells. This enables the T cells to target the specific antigens on the surfaces of cancer cells, leading to the release of cytotoxic compounds such as perforin and granzyme B. Cytokines may also be released to recruit endogenous immune cells for cotreatment. Additionally, the formation of memory T cells can establish a long-lasting antitumor mechanism *in vivo*[55-57].

ROR1 is currently considered a promising target in the design of CAR-T cell therapy. Hudecek *et al*[58] and Hudecek *et al*[59] designed a range of CAR-T cells targeting ROR1, featuring a concise “hinge-only” extracellular spacer, that was found to be highly effective in destroying ROR1-positive tumor cells and inducing T cell effector functions. The safety of this therapy is currently being evaluated due to concerns about cross-reaction with normal tissues by the scFv[60,61]. Lee *et al*[62] developed two CAR-T cell constructs targeting ROR1 by utilization of the antigen-recognition domains of zilovertamab and different hinge regions on the antibody. It was found that the construct with a truncated IgG4 hinge fragment was the most successful in terms of expression and *in vitro* functionality. Additionally, it effectively controlled tumor growth in xenograft mouse models with no significant toxicity. This study demonstrates the potential of Zilovertamab-derived ROR1 CAR-T for the clinical treatment of solid tumors.

The vast majority of candidate CAR targets in solid tumors, such as HER2, GD2, and mesothelin, are co-expressed in a variety of normal tissues, making off-tumor toxicity a significant risk for immunotherapies targeting these molecules. This makes it crucial to study the toxicity of ROR1 targeted therapy for gastrointestinal tumors, as ROR1 is no exception. SNIP CARs provide a solution to CAR-T therapy toxicities by utilizing a regulated protease-based system controlled by an FDA-approved small molecule. They offer improved potency and safety in various models, enabling remote control over CAR activity for treating solid tumors[63].

A study by Srivastava and colleagues[64] found that ROR1 CAR-T therapy led to fatal bone marrow failure in mice due to the recognition of ROR1-positive stromal cells. To enhance selectivity, they integrated synthetic Notch (synNotch) receptors specifically recognizing epithelial cell adhesion molecule or B7-H3 into T cells. These receptors were expressed on ROR1-positive cancer cells but not on stromal cells expressing ROR1. This induced a selective ROR1 CAR-T effect, leading to successful tumor ablation without toxicity in normal ROR1-positive cells. The study demonstrated that the use of synNotch receptors for combined antigen sensing can prevent CAR-T-cell-mediated lethal toxicity to normal tissue, provided that the tumor and normal tissue were spatially separated. However, if they are highly colocalized at the same site, this approach may not be effective. Moreover, the same group further discovered that ROR1 CAR-T cells showed poor tumor infiltration and malfunctioned. The inclusion of oxaliplatin, however, in the regimen allowed the recruitment of T cells by activated tumor macrophages[65], improving CAR-T-cell infiltration to modify the TME and increasing the sensitivity of the tumor to immunotherapy. Thus, the ROR1 CAR-T combination therapy provides an alternative strategy for the enhancement of CAR-T cell efficacy in clinical settings.

Some metabolites and small-molecule drugs can boost the anticancer actions of CAR-T cells. It was found that some short-chain fatty acids, such as butyrate and valerate, could enhance the actions of cytotoxic T lymphocytes and CAR-T cells through both epigenetic and metabolic means[66]. Furthermore, SD-208, a kinase inhibitor, could enhance the cytolytic activity, cytokine production, viability, and proliferation of ROR1-CAR T cells by blocking TGF-β receptor signaling[67]. These findings underscore the significance of novel combination therapies in enhancing the efficacy of ROR1 CAR T cells for treating gastrointestinal cancers.

CONCLUSION

ROR1 is a potentially effective therapeutic target for various gastrointestinal cancers. However, high expression of ROR1 on the surface of normal tissues poses potential risks for off-target tumor toxicity. Therefore, the use of treatments targeting ROR1 requires monitoring of potential toxicity to healthy tissues to ensure safety. The effectiveness of mAbs, ADCs, or BiTEs against ROR1 on solid tumors, including gastrointestinal cancers, may be restricted due to the characteristics of the TME and tumor heterogeneity. Therefore, if long-term localized expression of anti-ROR1 BiTEs or mAbs can be induced within tumors, this could recruit and activate tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes for effective antitumor effects. Oncolytic viruses can serve as vectors for delivering ROR1 BiTEs or mAbs, potentially offering a solution to this problem. Our group has constructed a novel oncolytic adenovirus that delivers anti-ROR1-BiTE, which has demonstrated efficient inhibition of the growth of tumor cells in a mouse xenograft model. This highlights the importance of the combination of oncolytic virotherapy with ROR1 CAR T cell therapy. Overall, the in-depth research into the use of treatments targeting ROR1 suggests that better strategies for the clinical treatment of gastrointestinal cancer will be developed in the future.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Wu ZL performed the majority of the writing, prepared the figures and tables; Wang Y coordinated the writing of the paper Wang H provided the input in writing the paper; Jia XY and Wang YG contributed to the conception and design of the paper, literature review, critical revision and approval of the final version.

Supported by the Hangzhou Medical Health Science and Technology Project, No. B20220173; the Public Welfare Technology Project of Zhejiang Province, No. LGF21H160033; and Zhejiang Medical Technology Plan Project, No. 2021KY047.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Yi-Gang Wang 0000-0003-4546-8179.

S-Editor: Liu JH
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Casaletto JB**, McClatchey AI. Spatial regulation of receptor tyrosine kinases in development and cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2012; **12**: 387-400 [PMID: 22622641 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3277]
2 **Zhao Y**, Zhang D, Guo Y, Lu B, Zhao ZJ, Xu X, Chen Y. Tyrosine Kinase ROR1 as a Target for Anti-Cancer Therapies. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 680834 [PMID: 34123850 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.680834]
3 **Forrester WC**. The Ror receptor tyrosine kinase family. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2002; **59**: 83-96 [PMID: 11846036 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-002-8407-9]
4 **Borcherding N**, Kusner D, Liu GH, Zhang W. ROR1, an embryonic protein with an emerging role in cancer biology. *Protein Cell* 2014; **5**: 496-502 [PMID: 24752542 DOI: 10.1007/s13238-014-0059-7]
5 **Baskar S**, Kwong KY, Hofer T, Levy JM, Kennedy MG, Lee E, Staudt LM, Wilson WH, Wiestner A, Rader C. Unique cell surface expression of receptor tyrosine kinase ROR1 in human B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 396-404 [PMID: 18223214 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-1823]
6 **Wilson C**, Goberdhan DC, Steller H. Dror, a potential neurotrophic receptor gene, encodes a Drosophila homolog of the vertebrate Ror family of Trk-related receptor tyrosine kinases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1993; **90**: 7109-7113 [PMID: 8394009 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.90.15.7109]
7 **Kipps TJ**. ROR1: an orphan becomes apparent. *Blood* 2022; **140**: 1583-1591 [PMID: 35580162 DOI: 10.1182/blood.2021014760]
8 **Stricker S**, Rauschenberger V, Schambony A. ROR-Family Receptor Tyrosine Kinases. *Curr Top Dev Biol* 2017; **123**: 105-142 [PMID:

28236965 DOI: 10.1016/bs.ctdb.2016.09.003]

9 **Heliste J**, Jokilammi A, Paatero I, Chakroborty D, Stark C, Savunen T, Laaksonen M, Elenius K. Receptor tyrosine kinase profiling of ischemic heart identifies ROR1 as a potential therapeutic target. *BMC Cardiovasc Disord* 2018; **18**: 196 [PMID: 30342492 DOI: 10.1186/s12872-018-0933-y]

10 **Kurita Y**, Ohki T, Soejima E, Yuan X, Kakino S, Wada N, Hashinaga T, Nakayama H, Tani J, Tajiri Y, Hiromatsu Y, Yamada K, Nomura M. A High-Fat/High-Sucrose Diet Induces WNT4 Expression in Mouse Pancreatic β-cells. *Kurume Med J* 2019; **65**: 55-62 [PMID: 30853690 DOI: 10.2739/kurumemedj.MS652008]

11 **Sánchez-Solana B**, Laborda J, Baladrón V. Mouse resistin modulates adipogenesis and glucose uptake in 3T3-L1 preadipocytes through the ROR1 receptor. *Mol Endocrinol* 2012; **26**: 110-127 [PMID: 22074948 DOI: 10.1210/me.2011-1027]

12 **Yu J**, Chen L, Chen Y, Hasan MK, Ghia EM, Zhang L, Wu R, Rassenti LZ, Widhopf GF, Shen Z, Briggs SP, Kipps TJ. Wnt5a induces ROR1 to associate with 14-3-3ζ for enhanced chemotaxis and proliferation of chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. *Leukemia* 2017; **31**: 2608-2614 [PMID: 28465528 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2017.132]

13 **Hasan MK**, Yu J, Chen L, Cui B, Widhopf Ii GF, Rassenti L, Shen Z, Briggs SP, Kipps TJ. Wnt5a induces ROR1 to complex with HS1 to enhance migration of chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. *Leukemia* 2017; **31**: 2615-2622 [PMID: 28465529 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2017.133]

14 **Hasan MK**, Rassenti L, Widhopf GF 2nd, Yu J, Kipps TJ. Wnt5a causes ROR1 to complex and activate cortactin to enhance migration of chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. *Leukemia* 2019; **33**: 653-661 [PMID: 30568170 DOI: 10.1038/s41375-018-0306-7]

15 **Hasan MK**, Yu J, Widhopf GF 2nd, Rassenti LZ, Chen L, Shen Z, Briggs SP, Neuberg DS, Kipps TJ. Wnt5a induces ROR1 to recruit DOCK2 to activate Rac1/2 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Blood* 2018; **132**: 170-178 [PMID: 29678828 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2017-12-819383]

16 **Balakrishnan A**, Goodpaster T, Randolph-Habecker J, Hoffstrom BG, Jalikis FG, Koch LK, Berger C, Kosasih PL, Rajan A, Sommermeyer D, Porter PL, Riddell SR. Analysis of ROR1 Protein Expression in Human Cancer and Normal Tissues. *Clin Cancer Res* 2017; **23**: 3061-3071 [PMID: 27852699 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-16-2083]

17 **Hudecek M**, Schmitt TM, Baskar S, Lupo-Stanghellini MT, Nishida T, Yamamoto TN, Bleakley M, Turtle CJ, Chang WC, Greisman HA, Wood B, Maloney DG, Jensen MC, Rader C, Riddell SR. The B-cell tumor-associated antigen ROR1 can be targeted with T cells modified to express a ROR1-specific chimeric antigen receptor. *Blood* 2010; **116**: 4532-4541 [PMID: 20702778 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-05-283309]

18 **Nomi M**, Oishi I, Kani S, Suzuki H, Matsuda T, Yoda A, Kitamura M, Itoh K, Takeuchi S, Takeda K, Akira S, Ikeya M, Takada S, Minami Y. Loss of mRor1 enhances the heart and skeletal abnormalities in mRor2-deficient mice: redundant and pleiotropic functions of mRor1 and mRor2 receptor tyrosine kinases. *Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **21**: 8329-8335 [PMID: 11713269 DOI: 10.1128/mcb.21.24.8329-8335.2001]

19 **Fukuda T**, Chen L, Endo T, Tang L, Lu D, Castro JE, Widhopf GF 2nd, Rassenti LZ, Cantwell MJ, Prussak CE, Carson DA, Kipps TJ. Antisera induced by infusions of autologous Ad-CD154-leukemia B cells identify ROR1 as an oncofetal antigen and receptor for Wnt5a. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2008; **105**: 3047-3052 [PMID: 18287027 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0712148105]

20 **Daneshmanesh AH**, Hojjat-Farsangi M, Moshfegh A, Khan AS, Mikaelsson E, Österborg A, Mellstedt H. The PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway is involved in direct apoptosis of CLL cells induced by ROR1 monoclonal antibodies. *Br J Haematol* 2015; **169**: 455-458 [PMID: 25407287 DOI: 10.1111/bjh.13228]

21 **Daneshmanesh AH**, Hojjat-Farsangi M, Khan AS, Jeddi-Tehrani M, Akhondi MM, Bayat AA, Ghods R, Mahmoudi AR, Hadavi R, Österborg A, Shokri F, Rabbani H, Mellstedt H. Monoclonal antibodies against ROR1 induce apoptosis of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) cells. *Leukemia* 2012; **26**: 1348-1355 [PMID: 22289919 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2011.362]

22 **Lamers CH**, Sleijfer S, van Steenbergen S, van Elzakker P, van Krimpen B, Groot C, Vulto A, den Bakker M, Oosterwijk E, Debets R, Gratama JW. Treatment of metastatic renal cell carcinoma with CAIX CAR-engineered T cells: clinical evaluation and management of on-target toxicity. *Mol Ther* 2013; **21**: 904-912 [PMID: 23423337 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2013.17]

23 **Mikels AJ**, Nusse R. Purified Wnt5a protein activates or inhibits beta-catenin-TCF signaling depending on receptor context. *PLoS Biol* 2006; **4**: e115 [PMID: 16602827 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.0040115]

24 **Chen Y**, Chen L, Yu J, Ghia EM, Choi MY, Zhang L, Zhang S, Sanchez-Lopez E, Widhopf GF 2nd, Messer K, Rassenti LZ, Jamieson C, Kipps TJ. Cirmtuzumab blocks Wnt5a/ROR1 stimulation of NF-κB to repress autocrine STAT3 activation in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Blood* 2019; **134**: 1084-1094 [PMID: 31409670 DOI: 10.1182/blood.2019001366]

25 **Zhang S**, Zhang H, Ghia EM, Huang J, Wu L, Zhang J, Lam S, Lei Y, He J, Cui B, Widhopf GF 2nd, Yu J, Schwab R, Messer K, Jiang W, Parker BA, Carson DA, Kipps TJ. Inhibition of chemotherapy resistant breast cancer stem cells by a ROR1 specific antibody. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2019; **116**: 1370-1377 [PMID: 30622177 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1816262116]

26 **Islam SS**, Uddin M, Noman ASM, Akter H, Dity NJ, Basiruzzman M, Uddin F, Ahsan J, Annoor S, Alaiya AA, Al-Alwan M, Yeger H, Farhat WA. Antibody-drug conjugate T-DM1 treatment for HER2+ breast cancer induces ROR1 and confers resistance through activation of Hippo transcriptional coactivator YAP1. *EBioMedicine* 2019; **43**: 211-224 [PMID: 31085100 DOI: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2019.04.061]

27 **Zhou Y**, Li Y, Zhou T, Zheng J, Li S, Li HB. Dietary Natural Products for Prevention and Treatment of Liver Cancer. *Nutrients* 2016; **8**: 156 [PMID: 26978396 DOI: 10.3390/nu8030156]

28 **Huang F**, Wang BR, Wu YQ, Wang FC, Zhang J, Wang YG. Oncolytic viruses against cancer stem cells: A promising approach for gastrointestinal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 7999-8009 [PMID: 27672294 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i35.7999]

29 **Cetin M**, Odabas G, Douglas LR, Duriez PJ, Balcik-Ercin P, Yalim-Camci I, Sayan AE, Yagci T. ROR1 Expression and Its Functional Significance in Hepatocellular Carcinoma Cells. *Cells* 2019; **8** [PMID: 30832318 DOI: 10.3390/cells8030210]

30 **Meng X**, Xu Y, Ning X. Tumor microenvironment acidity modulates ROR1 to promote epithelial-mesenchymal transition and hepatocarcinoma metastasis. *J Cell Sci* 2021; **134** [PMID: 33648935 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.255349]

31 **Ohira M**, Toyokawa T, Sakurai K, Kubo N, Tanaka H, Muguruma K, Yashiro M, Onoda N, Hirakawa K. Current status in remnant gastric cancer after distal gastrectomy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 2424-2433 [PMID: 26937131 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i8.2424]

32 **Hong JB**, Zuo W, Wang AJ, Lu NH. Helicobacter pylori Infection Synergistic with IL-1β Gene Polymorphisms Potentially Contributes to the Carcinogenesis of Gastric Cancer. *Int J Med Sci* 2016; **13**: 298-303 [PMID: 27076787 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.14239]

33 **Katoh M**, Katoh M. Transcriptional mechanisms of *WNT5A* based on NF-κB, Hedgehog, TGFβ, and Notch signaling cascades. *Int J Mol Med* 2009; **23**: 763-769 [DOI: 10.3892/ijmm_00000190]

34 **Wheeler DL**, Iida M, Dunn EF. The role of Src in solid tumors. *Oncologist* 2009; **14**: 667-678 [PMID: 19581523 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2009-0009]

35 **Talamonti MS**, Roh MS, Curley SA, Gallick GE. Increase in activity and level of pp60c-src in progressive stages of human colorectal cancer. *J Clin Invest* 1993; **91**: 53-60 [PMID: 7678609 DOI: 10.1172/jci116200]

36 **Zhou JK**, Zheng YZ, Liu XS, Gou Q, Ma R, Guo CL, Croce CM, Liu L, Peng Y. ROR1 expression as a biomarker for predicting prognosis in patients with colorectal cancer. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 32864-32872 [PMID: 28427197 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.15860]

37 **Patel S**, Alam A, Pant R, Chattopadhyay S. Wnt Signaling and Its Significance Within the Tumor Microenvironment: Novel Therapeutic Insights. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 2872 [PMID: 31921137 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02872]

38 **Yamazaki M**, Hino S, Usuki S, Miyazaki Y, Oda T, Nakao M, Ito T, Yamagata K. YAP/BRD4-controlled ROR1 promotes tumor-initiating cells and hyperproliferation in pancreatic cancer. *EMBO J* 2023; **42**: e112614 [PMID: 37096681 DOI: 10.15252/embj.2022112614]

39 **Nelson AL**, Dhimolea E, Reichert JM. Development trends for human monoclonal antibody therapeutics. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2010; **9**: 767-774 [PMID: 20811384 DOI: 10.1038/nrd3229]

40 **Choi MY**, Widhopf GF 2nd, Ghia EM, Kidwell RL, Hasan MK, Yu J, Rassenti LZ, Chen L, Chen Y, Pittman E, Pu M, Messer K, Prussak CE, Castro JE, Jamieson C, Kipps TJ. Phase I Trial: Cirmtuzumab Inhibits ROR1 Signaling and Stemness Signatures in Patients with Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia. *Cell Stem Cell* 2018; **22**: 951-959.e3 [PMID: 29859176 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2018.05.018]

41 **Cui B**, Widhopf GF, Prussak CE, Wu CCN, Sadarangani A, Zhang SP, Lao F, Jamieson CHM, Carson DA, Kipps TJ. Cirmtuzumab Vedotin (UC-961ADC3), An Anti-ROR1-Monomethyl Auristatin E Antibody-Drug Conjugate, Is a Potential Treatment For ROR1-Positive Leukemia and Solid Tumors. *Blood* 2013; **122**: 2 [DOI: 10.1182/blood.V122.21.1637.1637]

42 **Jiang VC**, Liu Y, Jordan A, McIntosh J, Li Y, Che Y, Jessen KA, Lannutti BJ, Wang M. The antibody drug conjugate VLS-101 targeting ROR1 is effective in CAR T-resistant mantle cell lymphoma. *J Hematol Oncol* 2021; **14**: 132 [PMID: 34454548 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-021-01143-w]

43 **Beerli RR**, Waldmeier L, Gébleux R, Pretto F, Grawunder U. NBE-002, an anthracycline-based immune-stimulatory antibody drug conjugate (iADC) targeting ROR1 for the treatment of triple-negative breast cancer. *Cancer Res* 2019; **79**: 2 [DOI: 10.1158/1538-7445.AM2019-LB-197]

44 **Chiang CL**, Goswami S, Frissora FW, Xie Z, Yan PS, Bundschuh R, Walker LA, Huang X, Mani R, Mo XM, Baskar S, Rader C, Phelps MA, Marcucci G, Byrd JC, Lee LJ, Muthusamy N. ROR1-targeted delivery of miR-29b induces cell cycle arrest and therapeutic benefit in vivo in a CLL mouse model. *Blood* 2019; **134**: 432-444 [PMID: 31151986 DOI: 10.1182/blood.2018882290]

45 **Mani R**, Mao Y, Frissora FW, Chiang CL, Wang J, Zhao Y, Wu Y, Yu B, Yan R, Mo X, Yu L, Flynn J, Jones J, Andritsos L, Baskar S, Rader C, Phelps MA, Chen CS, Lee RJ, Byrd JC, Lee LJ, Muthusamy N. Tumor antigen ROR1 targeted drug delivery mediated selective leukemic but not normal B-cell cytotoxicity in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Leukemia* 2015; **29**: 346-355 [PMID: 24947019 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2014.199]

46 **Qi J**, Li X, Peng H, Cook EM, Dadashian EL, Wiestner A, Park H, Rader C. Potent and selective antitumor activity of a T cell-engaging bispecific antibody targeting a membrane-proximal epitope of ROR1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2018; **115**: E5467-E5476 [PMID: 29844189 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1719905115]

47 **Wang Y**, Zhang Y, Sun H, Chen J, Yang H, Zhong Z, Xiao X, Li Y, Tang Y, Lu H, Tang X, Zhang M, Wu W, Zhou S, Yang J. Antitumor activity of a ROR1 × CD3 bispecific antibody in non-small cell lung cancer. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2023; **123**: 110686 [PMID: 37499397 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2023.110686]

48 **Granger D**, Gohil S, Barbarulo A, Baccaro A, Muczynski V, Chester K, Germaschewski F, Batten T, Brown K, Cook S, O'Donovan K, Jasani P, Nathwani AC, Phillips P. NVG-111, a novel ROR1xCD3 bispecific antibody for non-Hodgkin lymphoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2021; **39**: 3 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2021.39.15_suppl.7549]

49 **Gohil SH**, Paredes-Moscosso SR, Harrasser M, Vezzalini M, Scarpa A, Morris E, Davidoff AM, Sorio C, Nathwani AC, Della Peruta M. An ROR1 bi-specific T-cell engager provides effective targeting and cytotoxicity against a range of solid tumors. *Oncoimmunology* 2017; **6**: e1326437 [PMID: 28811962 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2017.1326437]

50 **Hojjat-Farsangi M**, Khan AS, Daneshmanesh AH, Moshfegh A, Sandin A, Mansouri L, Palma M, Lundin J, Österborg A, Mellstedt H. The tyrosine kinase receptor ROR1 is constitutively phosphorylated in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) cells. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e78339 [PMID: 24205204 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0078339]

51 **Gentile A**, Lazzari L, Benvenuti S, Trusolino L, Comoglio PM. Ror1 is a pseudokinase that is crucial for Met-driven tumorigenesis. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 3132-3141 [PMID: 21487037 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-2662]

52 **Hojjat-Farsangi M**, Daneshmanesh AH, Khan AS, Shetye J, Mozaffari F, Kharaziha P, Rathje LS, Kokhaei P, Hansson L, Vågberg J, Byström S, Olsson E, Löfberg C, Norström C, Schultz J, Norin M, Olin T, Österborg A, Mellstedt H, Moshfegh A. First-in-class oral small molecule inhibitor of the tyrosine kinase ROR1 (KAN0439834) induced significant apoptosis of chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. *Leukemia* 2018; **32**: 2291-2295 [PMID: 29725030 DOI: 10.1038/s41375-018-0113-1]

53 **Daneshmanesh AH**, Hojjat-Farsangi M, Ghaderi A, Moshfegh A, Hansson L, Schultz J, Vågberg J, Byström S, Olsson E, Olin T, Österborg A, Mellstedt H. A receptor tyrosine kinase ROR1 inhibitor (KAN0439834) induced significant apoptosis of pancreatic cells which was enhanced by erlotinib and ibrutinib. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0198038 [PMID: 29856777 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0198038]

54 **Ghaderi A**, Daneshmanesh AH, Moshfegh A, Kokhaei P, Vågberg J, Schultz J, Olin T, Harrysson S, Smedby KE, Drakos E, Rassidakis GZ, Österborg A, Hojjat-Farsangi M, Mellstedt H. ROR1 Is Expressed in Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma (DLBCL) and a Small Molecule Inhibitor of ROR1 (KAN0441571C) Induced Apoptosis of Lymphoma Cells. *Biomedicines* 2020; **8**: 170 [PMID: 32586008 DOI: 10.3390/biomedicines8060170]

55 **Davila ML**, Bouhassira DC, Park JH, Curran KJ, Smith EL, Pegram HJ, Brentjens R. Chimeric antigen receptors for the adoptive T cell therapy of hematologic malignancies. *Int J Hematol* 2014; **99**: 361-371 [PMID: 24311149 DOI: 10.1007/s12185-013-1479-5]

56 **Osorio-Rodríguez DA**, Camacho BA, Ramírez-Segura C. Anti-ROR1 CAR-T cells: Architecture and performance. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2023; **10**: 1121020 [PMID: 36873868 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2023.1121020]

57 **Peng H**, Nerreter T, Mestermann K, Wachter J, Chang J, Hudecek M, Rader C. ROR1-targeting switchable CAR-T cells for cancer therapy. *Oncogene* 2022; **41**: 4104-4114 [PMID: 35859167 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-022-02416-5]

58 **Hudecek M**, Lupo-Stanghellini MT, Kosasih PL, Sommermeyer D, Jensen MC, Rader C, Riddell SR. Receptor affinity and extracellular domain modifications affect tumor recognition by ROR1-specific chimeric antigen receptor T cells. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 3153-3164 [PMID: 23620405 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-0330]

59 **Hudecek M**, Sommermeyer D, Kosasih PL, Silva-Benedict A, Liu L, Rader C, Jensen MC, Riddell SR. The nonsignaling extracellular spacer domain of chimeric antigen receptors is decisive for in vivo antitumor activity. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2015; **3**: 125-135 [PMID: 25212991 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-14-0127]

60 **Broome HE**, Rassenti LZ, Wang HY, Meyer LM, Kipps TJ. ROR1 is expressed on hematogones (non-neoplastic human B-lymphocyte precursors) and a minority of precursor-B acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Leuk Res* 2011; **35**: 1390-1394 [PMID: 21813176 DOI: 10.1016/j.leukres.2011.06.021]

61 **Berger C**, Sommermeyer D, Hudecek M, Berger M, Balakrishnan A, Paszkiewicz PJ, Kosasih PL, Rader C, Riddell SR. Safety of targeting ROR1 in primates with chimeric antigen receptor-modified T cells. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2015; **3**: 206-216 [PMID: 25355068 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-14-0163]

62 **Lee BK**, Wan Y, Chin ZL, Deng L, Deng M, Leung TM, Hua J, Zhang H. Developing ROR1 Targeting CAR-T Cells against Solid Tumors in Preclinical Studies. *Cancers (Basel)* 2022; **14**: 3618 [PMID: 35892876 DOI: 10.3390/cancers14153618]

63 **Labanieh L**, Majzner RG, Klysz D, Sotillo E, Fisher CJ, Vilches-Moure JG, Pacheco KZB, Malipatlolla M, Xu P, Hui JH, Murty T, Theruvath J, Mehta N, Yamada-Hunter SA, Weber EW, Heitzeneder S, Parker KR, Satpathy AT, Chang HY, Lin MZ, Cochran JR, Mackall CL. Enhanced safety and efficacy of protease-regulated CAR-T cell receptors. *Cell* 2022; **185**: 1745-1763.e22 [PMID: 35483375 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2022.03.041]

64 **Srivastava S**, Salter AI, Liggitt D, Yechan-Gunja S, Sarvothama M, Cooper K, Smythe KS, Dudakov JA, Pierce RH, Rader C, Riddell SR. Logic-Gated ROR1 Chimeric Antigen Receptor Expression Rescues T Cell-Mediated Toxicity to Normal Tissues and Enables Selective Tumor Targeting. *Cancer Cell* 2019; **35**: 489-503.e8 [PMID: 30889382 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2019.02.003]

65 **Srivastava S**, Furlan SN, Jaeger-Ruckstuhl CA, Sarvothama M, Berger C, Smythe KS, Garrison SM, Specht JM, Lee SM, Amezquita RA, Voillet V, Muhunthan V, Yechan-Gunja S, Pillai SPS, Rader C, Houghton AM, Pierce RH, Gottardo R, Maloney DG, Riddell SR. Immunogenic Chemotherapy Enhances Recruitment of CAR-T Cells to Lung Tumors and Improves Antitumor Efficacy when Combined with Checkpoint Blockade. *Cancer Cell* 2021; **39**: 193-208.e10 [PMID: 33357452 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2020.11.005]

66 **Luu M**, Riester Z, Baldrich A, Reichardt N, Yuille S, Busetti A, Klein M, Wempe A, Leister H, Raifer H, Picard F, Muhammad K, Ohl K, Romero R, Fischer F, Bauer CA, Huber M, Gress TM, Lauth M, Danhof S, Bopp T, Nerreter T, Mulder IE, Steinhoff U, Hudecek M, Visekruna A. Microbial short-chain fatty acids modulate CD8(+) T cell responses and improve adoptive immunotherapy for cancer. *Nat Commun* 2021; **12**: 4077 [PMID: 34210970 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-021-24331-1]

67 **Stüber T**, Monjezi R, Wallstabe L, Kühnemundt J, Nietzer SL, Dandekar G, Wöckel A, Einsele H, Wischhusen J, Hudecek M. Inhibition of TGF-β-receptor signaling augments the antitumor function of ROR1-specific CAR T-cells against triple-negative breast cancer. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8**: e000676 [PMID: 32303620 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000676]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 614-634

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.614

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Different types of tumor microvessels in stage I-IIIA squamous cell lung cancer and their clinical significance

Marina A Senchukova, Evgeniy A Kalinin, Nadezhda N Volchenko

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Zhang X, China

Received: December 27, 2023
Peer-review started: December 27, 2023
First decision: January 17, 2024
Revised: February 12, 2024
Accepted: March 28, 2024
Article in press: March 28, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Marina A Senchukova, Department of Oncology, Orenburg State Medical University, Orenburg 460000, Russia

Evgeniy A Kalinin, Department of Thoracic Surgery, Orenburg Regional Cancer Clinic, Orenburg 460021, Russia

Nadezhda N Volchenko, Department of Pathology, PA Hertzen Moscow Oncology Research Centre, Branch of National Medical Research Radiological Center, Moscow 125284, Russia

Corresponding author: Marina A Senchukova, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Oncology, Orenburg State Medical University, Sovetskaya Street 6, Orenburg 460000, Russia.
masenchukova@yandex.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Lung cancer (LC) is the leading cause of morbidity and mortality among malignant neoplasms. Improving the diagnosis and treatment of LC remains an urgent task of modern oncology. Previously, we established that in gastric, breast and cervical cancer, tumor microvessels (MVs) differ in morphology and have different prognostic significance. The connection between different types of tumor MVs and the progression of LC is not well understood.

AIM

To evaluate the morphological features and clinical significance of tumor MVs in lung squamous cell carcinoma (LUSC).

METHODS

A single-center retrospective cohort study examined medical records and archival paraffin blocks of 62 and 180 patients with stage I-IIIA LUSC in the training and main cohorts, respectively. All patients underwent radical surgery (R0) at the Orenburg Regional Cancer Clinic from May/20/2009 to December/14/2021. Tumor sections were routinely processed, and routine Mayer's hematoxylin and eosin staining and immunohistochemical staining for cluster of differentiation 34 (CD34), podoplanin, Snail and hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha were performed. The morphological features of different types of tumor MVs, tumor parenchyma and stroma were studied according to clinicopathological characteristics and LUSC prognosis. Statistical analysis was performed using Statistica 10.0 software. Univariate and multivariate logistic regression analyses were performed to

identify potential risk factors for LUSC metastasis to regional lymph nodes (RLNs) and disease recurrence. Receiver operating characteristic curves were constructed to discriminate between patients with and without metastases in RLNs and those with and without disease recurrence. The effectiveness of the predictive models was assessed by the area under the curve. Survival was analyzed using the Kaplan-Meier method. The log-rank test was used to compare survival curves between patient subgroups. A value of $P < 0.05$ was considered to indicate statistical significance.

RESULTS

Depending on the morphology, we classified tumor vessels into the following types: normal MVs, dilated capillaries (DCs), atypical DCs, DCs with weak expression of CD34, "contact-type" DCs, structures with partial endothelial linings, capillaries in the tumor solid component and lymphatic vessels in lymphoid and polymorphocellular infiltrates. We also evaluated the presence of loose, fine fibrous connective tissue (LFFCT) and retraction clefts in the tumor stroma, tumor spread into the alveolar air spaces (AASs) and fragmentation of the tumor solid component. According to multivariate analysis, the independent predictors of LUSC metastasis in RLNs were central tumor location ($P < 0.00001$), the presence of retraction clefts ($P = 0.003$), capillaries in the tumor solid component ($P = 0.023$) and fragmentation in the tumor solid component ($P = 0.009$), whereas the independent predictors of LUSC recurrence were tumor grade 3 (G3) ($P = 0.001$), stage N2 ($P = 0.016$), the presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma ($P < 0.00001$), fragmentation of the tumor solid component ($P = 0.0001$), and the absence of tumor spread through the AASs ($P = 0.0083$).

CONCLUSION

The results obtained confirm the correctness of our previously proposed classification of different types of tumor vessels and may contribute to improving the diagnosis and treatment of LUSC.

Key Words: Lung cancer; Lung squamous cell carcinoma; Tumor microvessels; Tumor stroma; Regional lymph node metastases; Disease recurrence; Disease prognosis

Core Tip: In this retrospective study, we examined the morphology of different types of tumor microvessels, tumor parenchyma, and tumor stroma and their associations with the risk of regional metastasis and disease recurrence in lung squamous cell carcinoma (LUSC) patients. Independent predictors of LUSC metastases in regional lymph nodes were the central location of the tumor ($P < 0.00001$), the presence of retraction clefts ($P = 0.003$), capillaries in the solid component of the tumor ($P = 0.023$) and fragmentation of the solid component of the tumor ($P = 0.009$), while independent predictors of LUSC recurrence were tumor grade 3 ($P = 0.001$), N2 stage ($P = 0.016$), the presence of loose fine fibrous connective tissue in the tumor stroma ($P < 0.00001$), fragmentation of the tumor solid component ($P = 0.0001$) and the absence of tumor spread through the alveolar air spaces ($P = 0.0083$). These findings may help improve the diagnosis and treatment of LUSC.

Citation: Senchukova MA, Kalinin EA, Volchenko NN. Different types of tumor microvessels in stage I-IIIA squamous cell lung cancer and their clinical significance. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 614-634
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/614.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.614

INTRODUCTION

Lung cancer (LC) is the leading cause of morbidity and mortality among malignant neoplasms[1,2]. There are two main histological forms of LC: Non-small cell LC (NSCLC) and small cell LC (SCLC). NSCLC accounts for up to 80% of all LC cases[3], 20% to 67.5% of which are lung squamous cell carcinomas (LUSC)[4-6]. Despite a decrease in the incidence of NSCLC, mortality rates remain very high and are associated with late diagnosis, an aggressive course of the disease even in the early stages, and the presence of severe comorbidities in patients older than 60 years; these conditions prevail among patients with NSCLC, and radical treatment is often impossible for these patients.

Although both LUSC and lung adenocarcinoma are classified as NSCLC, increasing evidence suggests that these cancers have different origins, different mutational profiles, different biological behaviors, different sensitivities to drugs and radiation therapy (RT), and different disease prognoses[4,7,8]. The development of LUSC is preceded by squamous metaplasia of the bronchial epithelium, which is closely associated with smoking. In addition, alcohol consumption; infections such as human papillomavirus and Epstein–Barr virus[4,7]; and environmental pollution also increase the risk of LUSC[9]. LUSC can have both central and peripheral localization and is characterized by a high rate of genetic mutations, chromosomal instability, and a high degree of cellular heterogeneity[7,10]. Late diagnosis and the lack of treatment methods specific for this disease determine the high mortality rate from this pathology, which is almost 30%

greater than the mortality rate from lung adenocarcinoma[4,8].

The choice of optimal treatment for LUSC, determining the indications for neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy, is based on an assessment of the risk of disease relapse[11,12]. Currently, this assessment is based on disease stage, histopathological features and genetic alterations. However, for LUSC patients with the same clinicopathological and molecular genetic characteristics, the response to treatment and survival rates can differ significantly[11,13,14]. Thus, the search for new prognostic and predictive markers of LUSC has not lost relevance.

Angiogenesis is one of the key factors in tumor progression[15,16]. Its activation is associated with hypoxia, inflammatory processes, epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), the formation of the phenotype of stem cells, and other factors[16-18]. Assessment of angiogenesis activity is currently considered the most important factor associated with disease prognosis and therapeutic effectiveness[16,19,20].

Previously, in gastric cancer, breast cancer, and squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix, we proposed a classification of tumor microvessels (MVs) based on their morphology and correlations with the clinical and pathological characteristics and prognosis of these diseases[21-23]. The aim of this study was to evaluate the morphological features and clinical significance of various types of tumor MVs, as well as tumor parenchymal and stromal components, in LUSC.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patient characteristics

This single-center retrospective cohort study of the "case–control" type was conducted in accordance with the Helsinki Declaration and internationally recognized guidelines after receiving study approval from the Ethics Committee of Orenburg State Medical University (No. 281, dated 30 September 2021). One hundred eighty archived paraffin blocks of patients with LUSC stages I-IIIA were retrieved from the tumor bank of the Orenburg Regional Cancer Clinic. All patients underwent radical surgery (R0) at this clinic from May/20/2009 to December/14/2021. None of the patients included in the study underwent preoperative chemotherapy (ChT) or RT. The patients did not receive steroids, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, or antihistamines and had no significant comorbid pathologies in the decompensation stage.

The age of the patients was 61.6 ± 6.7 years (median 62 years). There were 174 men and 6 women. The right lung was affected in 93 (51.7%) patients, and the left lung was affected in 87 patients (48.3%). The tumor was localized in the upper lobe in 102 (56.7%) patients, in the middle lobe in 5 (2.8%), in the lower lobe in 49 (27.2%), and in the main bronchus in 24 (13.3%).

To study the features of the tumor MV morphology and their correlations with clinical and morphological characteristics and disease prognosis, 20 archived paraffin blocks of patients with stage I LUSC, 22 with stage II LUSC and 20 with stage IIIA LUSC were randomly selected. The patients composed the training cohort. There were no differences in age, type, comorbidity status, histology or tumor grade between the main and training groups of patients, while differences in the volume of surgery and adjuvant therapy were because, in the main cohort, there was a greater percentage of patients with locally advanced LUSC. In addition, it should be noted that in the training cohort, a greater percentage of patients received postoperative radiotherapy as an adjuvant treatment. This is because patients in this group received treatment between 2009 and 2013. During this period, radiotherapy was most commonly used as an adjuvant treatment for LUSC. However, over the past 10 years, ChT or chemoradiotherapy has been used most often as an adjuvant treatment for LC. The baseline patient clinicopathological and treatment information is shown in Table 1.

During the observation period, 27 (15.0%) patients were diagnosed with cancer in other locations: Prostate cancer in 12 (6.7%), nasal mucosa cancer in 4 (2.2%), skin cancer in 7 (3.9%), bladder cancer in 1 (0.6%), laryngeal cancer in 1 (0.6%), breast cancer in 1 (0.6%), and colon cancer in 1 (0.6%).

As of January/31/2023, 84 (46.7%) patients were alive. LUSC recurrence was diagnosed in 95 (52.8%) patients, 83 of whom died from disease progression; 13 (7.2%) patients with LC died from nononcological pathology. LUSC recurrence was local in 44 (24.4%) patients, systemic in 41 (22.7%), and local and systemic in 7 (3.9%). In particular, metastases to the lungs and pleura were detected in 30 (16.7%) patients; to the mediastinum, 15 (8.3%); to the liver, 10 (5.6%); to the brain, 5 (2.8%); to the cervical lymph nodes, 3 (1.7%); and to the bones, 6 (3.3%). Multiple metastases were detected in 24 (13.3%) patients. Forty-four patients received 1 to 4 courses of mono- or polychemotherapy due to LC recurrence. Eight patients with LC relapse continued to receive monochemotherapy.

In 2020-2022, six patients were treated for COVID-19, and one patient died from a new coronavirus infection. The median follow-up period was 66 months for patients in the main cohort and 72 months for patients in the training cohort.

Pathology

Sections (4 μm) were cut on a microtome and transferred to glass slides (SuperFrost® Plus, Menzel, Thermo Scientific, United States). Sections were stained with Mayer's hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) and studied *via* light microscopy (Levenhuk D740T digital microscope connected to a 5.1 MP camera, Russia). At 200 × magnification, the presence or absence of loose, fine fibrous connective tissue (LFFCT) in the tumor stroma, fragmentation in the tumor solid component, retraction clefts and tumor spread through the alveolar air spaces (AASs) were determined.

Immunohistochemistry

The morphology of the tumor MVs was studied *via* immunohistochemical staining of histological sections with antibodies against cluster of differentiation 34 (CD34) and podoplanin (PDPN). For immunohistochemistry (IHC), 4-μm sections were stained with the following antibodies: Monoclonal antibody against CD34, 1:100 dilution; polyclonal antibody

Table 1 Baseline patient clinicopathological and treatment information

Clinical and pathological data	Patient groups				Significance level (*P* value)
	Main cohort (*n* = 180)		Training cohort (*n* = 62)		
	n	%	*n*	%	
Age (yr)					
< 60	60	33.3	20	32.3	0.897
60-69	98	54.5	33	53.2	
≥ 70	22	12.2	9	14.5	
Tumor location					
Central	119	66.1	38	61.3	0.493
Peripheral	61	33.9	24	38.7	
Comorbidity					
Absence	22	12.2	8	12.3	0.888
Presence	158	87.8	54	87.7	
Histology					
KSCC	56	31.1	21	33.9	0.687
NKSCC	124	68.9	41	66.1	
Tumor grade					
G1	57	31.7	23	37.1	0.325
G2	88	48.9	32	51.6	
G3	35	19.4	7	11.3	
T stage					
T1a	9	5.0	8	12.9	0.039[a]
T1b	15	8.3	6	9.7	
T2a	82	45.6	34	54.8	
T2b	17	9.4	5	8.1	
T3	57	31.7	9	14.5	
N stage					
N0	48	26.7	22	35.5	0.411
N1	88	48.9	26	41.9	
N2	44	24.4	14	22.6	
Stage					
I	30	16.7	20	32.3	0.03[a]
II	73	40.6	22	32.4	
III	77	42.8	20	32.3	
Type of surgery					
Lobectomy	84	46.7	40	64.4	0.001[a]
Bilobectomy	6	3.3	5	8.1	
Pneumonectomy	86	47.8	13	21.0	
Segmentectomy	4	2.2	4	6.5	
Adjuvant therapy					
Absent	51	28.3	27	43.5	0.002[a]
Chemotherapy	68	37.8	10	16.1	

Radiation therapy	38	21.1	21	33.9
Chemo- and radiotherapy	23	12.8	4	6.5

[a]$P < 0.05$, the differences between groups are statistically significant.
KSCC: Keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma; NKSCC: Nonkeratinizing squamous cell carcinoma.

against PDPN, 1:50 dilution; polyclonal antibody against Snail homolog 1 (SNAI1), 1:100 dilution; and polyclonal antibody against hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha (HIF-1a), 1:200 dilution (Cloud-Clone Corp®, Texas, United States). Staining with antibodies against SNAI1 and HIF-1a was performed when fragmentation in the solid component of the tumor was detected in the test samples. The staining procedure was performed according to the manufacturers' protocols as described previously[23]. For the negative control sections, the primary antibodies were replaced with phosphate-buffered saline, and the sections were processed in the same manner. All sections were carefully and completely scanned by two of the authors (Evgeniy A Kalinin and Marina A Senchukova) without knowledge of the clinical and pathological data. The MV density (MVD) was assessed by counting the number of CD34-positive and PDPN-positive normal MVs in accordance with the international consensus on the methodology and criteria for the quantitative evaluation of angiogenesis in human solid tumors[24]. The MVD was determined in five fields of view at high magnification (× 800) at the selected "hot spots", that is, areas where positively stained vessels were highly concentrated.

The density of dilated capillaries (DCs), atypical DCs (ADCs) and structures with a partial endothelial lining (SPELs) was estimated at low magnification (× 200) in the three fields of view in the selected "hot spots". The presence or absence of DCs with weak expression of CD34, contact-type DCs, lymphatic vessels (LVs) in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates and tumor emboli in CD34-positive and PDPN-positive vessels was also assessed in the tumor samples.

Statistical analysis

Statistical analysis was performed using Statistica 10.0 software. Quantitative data are presented as the mean ± SD, while categorical variables are presented as numbers and percentages (*n*, %). Correlations between different data were evaluated using the nonparametric Spearman's rank correlation or gamma correlation. Chi-square tests were carried out to analyze the differences in distribution among the categorized data. The Mann–Whitney *U* nonparametric test was used to compare the values of the quantitative data. Both univariate and multivariate logistic regression analyses were performed to identify potential risk factors for LUSC metastasis to regional lymph nodes (RLNs) and disease recurrence. Receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curves were constructed to discriminate between patients with and without LUSC metastases in the RLNs and those with and without LUSC recurrence. The best threshold (cutoff) values were determined by the largest Youden's index (J = sensitivity + specificity - 1). The effectiveness of the predictive models was assessed by the area under the curve (AUC). Survival was analyzed using the Kaplan–Meier method. The log-rank test was used to compare survival curves between patient subgroups. A value of $P < 0.05$ was considered to indicate statistical significance.

RESULTS

Previously, in squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix, we proposed classifying tumor MVs into eight types according to their size, shape, clarity of contours, localization, characteristics of the endothelial lining, intensity of CD34 and PDPN staining, and content of the MV lumen[23]. The types of MVs described included normal MVs, DCs, ADCs, DCs with weak CD34 expression, contact-type DCs, SPELs, capillaries in the tumor solid component, and LVs in lymphoid and polymorphocellular infiltrates. These tumor MVs not only differed in morphology but were also associated with different clinical and morphological characteristics of squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix and long-term treatment results.

Identification of different types of tumor microvessels in LUSC specimens from the training patient cohort

In the first phase of this study, we identified eight previously described tumor MVs and endothelial-lined structures in 62 LUSC specimens (from the training patient cohort) *via* immunohistochemical staining with antibodies against CD34 and PDPN (Figure 1). Here, is a brief description of them:

Normal MVs: The normal MVs were capillaries with a diameter of 5-40 microns (Figure 1A). The MVD was 14.0 ± 4.7 per conventional unit area (range 2.4–28.8, median 13.3). The cytoplasm of some vessels of this type was positive when stained with antibodies against PDPN.

DCs: DCs were defined as MVs larger than 40 microns in size that were regular in shape with clear, even contours (Figure 1B). The DC density was 4.4 ± 3.3 per conventional unit area (range 0–12.4, median 4.1), and it was significantly greater along the invasive edge of the tumor than in the central region ($P = 0.002$). The cytoplasm of the endothelial cells in these vessels was negative when stained with antibodies against PDPN.

ADCs: The ADCs were MVs larger than 40 microns in size and irregular in shape with a chaotic arrangement of endothelial lining cells (Figure 1C). Tumor emboli and CD34-positive cells were often observed in the lumen of these vessels. The endothelial lining of dilated lymphatic capillaries had similar characteristics, so we believe that some ADCs

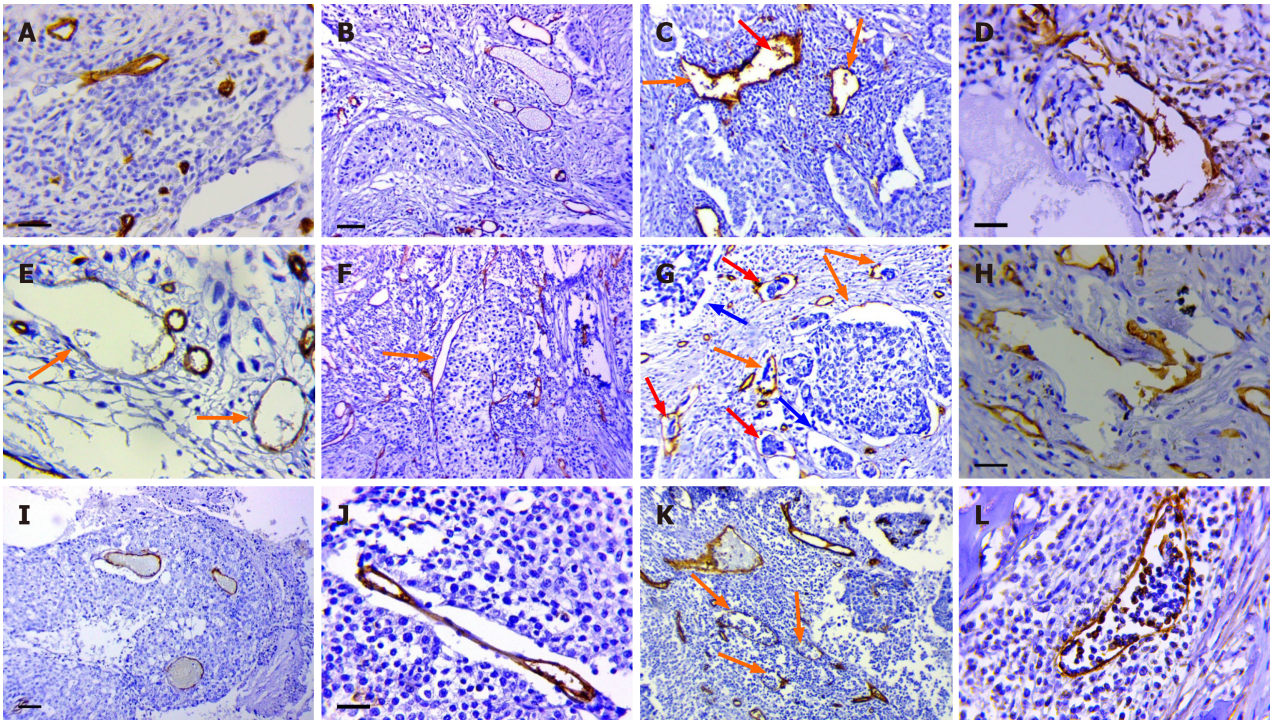


Figure 1 Different types of tumor microvessels. A: Normal microvessels. Scale bar = 10 μm; B: Dilated capillaries (DCs). Scale bar = 100 μm; C: Atypical DCs with tumor emboli (orange arrows) and cluster of differentiation 34 (CD34)-positive cells (red arrow) in their lumen, Scale bar = 100 μm; D: Lymphatic capillary with the chaotic arrangement of the endothelial cells. Scale bar = 10 μm; E: DCs with weak expression of CD34 (orange arrows). Scale bar = 10 μm; F: Contact-type DCs (orange arrow). Scale bar = 100 μm; G: Structures with partial endothelial lining (type 1, orange arrows), structures without endothelial lining (blue arrows) and vessels with complexes of tumor cells in their lumen (red arrows). Scale bar = 100 μm; H: Structures with partial endothelial lining (type 2). Scale bar = 10 μm; I: Capillaries in the tumor solid component (type 1). Scale bar = 100 μm; J: Capillaries in the tumor solid component (type 2). Scale bar = 10 μm; K: Lymphatic capillary in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates. Scale bar = 100 μm; L: Lymphatic capillary in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates. Scale bar = 10 μm scale; A-C, E-K: Staining with antibodies against CD34; D and L: Staining with antibodies against PDPN.

were LVs (Figure 1D). The density of ADCs (CD34) was 7.7 ± 3.9 per conventional unit area (range 1.0–19.4, median 7.5), and the density of dilated LVs was 2.1 ± 1.2 per conventional unit area (range 0.3–5.0, median 1.9).

DCs with weak expression of CD34: These vessels were defined as capillaries with a regular shape and smooth contours and very weak, sometimes barely detectable, expression of CD34 in the endothelial cell cytoplasm. These cells had large, pale nuclei with weakly condensed chromatin (Figure 1E). The average diameter of vessels of this type was 68.7 ± 29.5 μm. The described vessels were observed only in LFFCT and were not stained with antibodies against PDPN; that is, they were blood vessels. These vessels were identified in 26 (41.9%) of the LUSC samples.

The contact-type DCs: The described vessels were MVs, the walls of which were in direct contact with tumor cells. The described MVs had a regular shape and clear, even contours (Figure 1F). The average diameter was 68.7 ± 29.5 μm. Some vessels of this type were stained with PDPN; that is, they were LVs. Contact-type DCs were found in 36 (58.1%) of the studied samples.

Structures with partial endothelial linings: Structures with partial endothelial linings were first described in gastric cancer[21]. We observed two types of SPELs in both LUSC and squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix. The first type was associated with retraction clefts. In tumor samples with type 1 SPELs, structures without an endothelial lining (retraction clefts) and vessels with complexes of tumor cells in their lumen were often observed (Figure 1G). The described SPELs were identified in 28 (45.2%) of the samples. In most cases, these structures were positive when stained with antibodies against PDPN.

Type 2 SPELs were observed predominantly in the peritumoral stroma; they were often linear or irregular in shape and were positive when stained with antibodies against CD34 and PDPN (Figure 1H). The density of CD34-positive SPELs was 3.2 ± 1.8 per arbitrary unit area (range 0.3-7.6, median 2.8), and the density of PDPN-positive SPELs was 1.2 ± 1.0 (range 0–4.4, median 1.1).

Capillaries in the solid component of the tumor: We observed 2 types of such vessels. The first type of vessel consisted of capillaries, the walls of which were in direct contact with tumor cells (Figure 1I). The average diameter of these vessels was 34 ± 32.1 μm. There was no content in the lumen of the vessels, or it was represented by erythrocytes. Type 1 capillaries were found in 29.1% of the LUSC samples. The second type of vessel was linear capillaries whose walls were retracted from tumor cells (Figure 1J). Vessels of the second type were found in 32.3% of the samples. In 35% of the samples, capillaries of both types were observed in the solid component of the tumor. Both types of vessels were negative

when stained with antibodies against PDPN.

LVs in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates: LVs in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates had very thin, sometimes slightly noticeable endothelial linings when stained with antibodies against CD34 and were not visible when stained with Mayer's H&E (Figure 1K). Lymphocytes or other leukocytes were found in large numbers in the lumen. All vessels of this type were positive when stained with antibodies against PDPN (Figure 1L). The described vessels were found in 32.3% of the LUSC samples.

Features of parenchymal and stromal tumor components in LUSC specimens from the training patient cohort

Considering the published data and our earlier results, we included the following features of the parenchymal and stromal components of the tumor in the analysis:

The presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma: LFFCT was rich in cells with large pale nuclei and weakly condensed chromatin (Figure 2A). LFFCT was most often detected peritumorally and was noted in 57.8% of the LUSC samples.

The tumor spread through the AASs: In our study, tumor spread through the AASs was observed in 41 (66.1%) samples. Only in 6 samples did tumor cells spread through relatively unchanged AASs (Figure 2B). In other samples, the walls of the alveoli were thickened and contained DCs, sometimes merging with each other (Figure 2C). In the AASs, both unchanged clusters of tumor cells and completely necrotic tumor masses were observed. In a number of samples, fragmentation of tumor masses that spread through the AASs was noted (Figure 2D).

The fragmentation of the tumor solid component: This phenomenon was defined as the appearance of individual fibroblast-like tumor cells with nuclear expression of HIF-1a and Snail in the tumor solid component or in the tumor masses spreading through the AASs (Figure 2E and F). This phenomenon was noted in 46 (68%) of the LUSC samples.

The presence of retraction clefts: This phenomenon has been described in some tumor types and involves the presence of empty spaces around tumor nests[25,26]. Several studies have demonstrated that the presence of retraction clefts may be associated with a poor prognosis in patients with various malignant tumors[27-29] or more aggressive tumors[30]. In LUSC, retraction clefts were detected in 77% of the samples (Figure 2G). In 28 (45.2%) samples, the described structures had partial endothelial linings (Figure 2H).

It should be noted that in some samples, the described phenomenon had to be differentiated from tumor spread through AASs. The retraction of tumor nests from a pronounced stroma, presented by fibrous connective tissue, was regarded as a retraction cleft.

Associations of different types of tumor microvessels and features of parenchymal and stromal tumor components with clinical characteristics and prognosis in LUSC

The density of normal MVs (MVD), DCs, ADCs and SPELs according to the clinical and pathological characteristics and prognosis of patients with LUSC are presented in Supplementary Table 1.

According to the obtained results, neither the density of the described vessels nor the SPELs were associated with the presence of metastases in RLNs or the prognosis of LC. MVD was greater in patients younger than 60 years, in stage T2a and T2b, in stage N0 and N1, in nonkeratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (NKSCC), in the presence of LVI in the tumor samples, and in patients with a high or moderate degree of tumor malignancy (G3 and G2); however, the differences in the groups were not statistically significant ($P > 0.05$). The DC density was significantly lower in G3 than in G1 and G2 ($P = 0.04$) and somewhat lower in the presence of LVI than in the absence of LVI; however, these differences were not statistically significant ($P > 0.05$). Correlations between the density of ADCs or SPELs (CD34) and clinical and pathological characteristics and LUSC prognosis have not been established; however, the LV density and density of SPELs (PDPN) were significantly greater in peripheral LCs than in central LCs ($P = 0.003$ and $P = 0.007$, respectively). In addition, the density of SPELs (PDPN) was greater in the presence of LVI than in the absence of LVI ($P = 0.04$).

Similarly, according to the ROC analysis data, neither the density of the described vessels nor the SPELs were associated with the presence of RLN metastases (RLNM) or the prognosis of LC. The ROC analysis data are presented in Supplementary Figure 1.

The data on the frequency of DCs with weak expression of CD34, DCs of contact type, capillaries in the solid component of the tumor and LVs in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates, depending on the clinical and pathological characteristics and prognosis of LUSC, are presented in Supplementary Table 2.

As shown in the data, DCs with weak expression of CD34 were detected significantly more often in patients with LUSC recurrence than in patients without LUSC recurrence and somewhat more often in patients with keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (KSCC) than in patients with NKSCC ($P > 0.05$). In patients with and without disease relapse, these vessels were detected in 61.5% and 27.8%, respectively ($P = 0.008$).

The analysis showed that contact-type DCs were detected significantly more often in stage I and IIIA LUSC than in stage II ($P = 0.04$) and somewhat more often in peripheral LUSC than in central LUSC ($P > 0.05$) and in stage N0 and N2 than in stage N1 ($P > 0.05$). However, in patients with stage II and IIIA LUSC, contact-type DCs were significantly more often detected at stage IIIA than at stage II (70.0% *vs* 36.4%, respectively, $P = 0.03$); moreover, contact-type DCs were more common in the presence of disease recurrence than in its absence (61.9% *vs* 33.3%, respectively, $P = 0.06$). It can be cautiously assumed that for small tumors, vessels of this type can adequately provide tumor cells with oxygen, while for large tumors, they can contribute to tumor progression, for example, by activating epithelial–mesenchymal transformation.

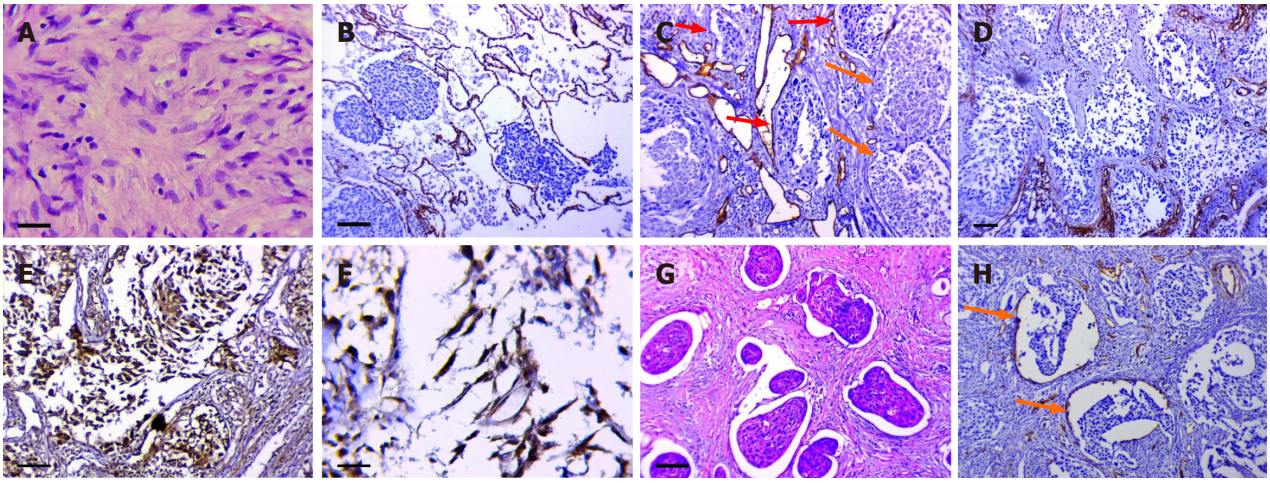


Figure 2 Features of parenchymal and stromal tumor components. A: Loose, fine fibrous connective tissue in the tumor stroma. Scale bar = 10 μm; B: Tumor spread through the unchanged alveolar air spaces (AASs). Scale bar = 100 μm; C: Spread of the relatively unchanged clusters of tumor cells (red arrows) and the completely necrotic tumor masses (orange arrows) through the AASs having thickened walls with dilated capillaries. Scale bar = 100 μm; D: Fragmentation of the tumor masses spreading through the AASs. Scale bar = 100 μm; E: Positive nuclear expression of hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha (HIF-1a) in fibroblast-like tumor cells. Scale bar = 10 μm; F: Positive nuclear expression of Snail in fibroblast-like tumor cells. Scale bar = 10 μm; G: Retraction clefts. Scale bar = 100 μm; H: Structures with partial endothelial lining (orange arrows). Scale bar = 100 μm. A and G: Mayer's hematoxylin and eosin staining; B, C and H: Staining with antibodies against cluster of differentiation 34; E: Staining with antibodies against HIF-1a; F: Staining with antibodies against Snail.

There were no significant differences in the frequency of LVs in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates according to clinical and morphological characteristics or the LUSC prognosis. These vessels were somewhat more common in stage T1a and T3 than in stage T1b-T2b (P = 0.054), in stage I and IIIA than in stage II, in KSCC than in NKSCC, and in the presence of LVI in the tumor samples than in the absence of LVI; however, the differences among the groups were not statistically significant (P > 0.05).

We also investigated the correlations between tumor parenchymal and stromal component features and LUSC clinical and pathological characteristics and disease prognosis. The data are presented in Supplementary Table 3.

The analysis revealed that LFFCT in the tumor stroma was significantly more common in the tumor samples from patients with LUSC recurrence than in those from patients without LUSC recurrence (76.9% *vs* 44.4%, P = 0.01) and was somewhat more common in the tumor samples from patients older than 70 years; in patients younger than 60 years, aged 60 to 70 years and older than 70 years, LFFCT was detected in 45.0%, 57.6% and 88.9% of the tumor samples, respectively (P = 0.16).

In turn, fragmentation in the tumor solid component was observed in 79.5%, 81.3% and 42.9% of the tumor samples from patients with G1, G2 and G3, respectively (P = 0.09); in 70.0%, 72.7% and 100.0% of the tumor samples from patients younger than 60 years, aged 60 to 70 years and older than 70 years, respectively (P = 0.18); in 50%, 50%, 79.4%, 100% and 88.9% of the tumor samples from patients in stages T1a, T1b, T2a, T2b and T3, respectively (P = 0.13); in 63.6%, 81.8% and 85.0% of the tumor samples from patients in stages N0, N1 and N2, respectively (P = 0.24); in 60.0%, 81.8% and 85.0% of the tumor samples from patients in stages I, II and IIIA, respectively (P = 0.13); and in 84.0% and 69.4% of the tumor samples from patients with and without disease recurrence, respectively (P = 0.17).

Retraction clefts were detected in 54.5%, 61.5% and 78.6% of the tumor samples from patients with stage N0, N1 and N2 LUSC, respectively (P = 0.049).

Tumor spread through the AASs was significantly more often detected in patients with peripheral LUSC than in those with central LUSC (78.9% *vs* 41.7%, P = 0.003); in the N0 stage than in the N1 and N2 stages (90.9% *vs* 50.0% and 50.0%, P = 0.006); and in patients with stage I LUSC than in those with stage II or IIIA LUSC (90.0% *vs* 54.5% and 50.0%, respectively, P = 0.03).

Correlations between the different types of tumor microvessels and characteristics of the parenchymal and stromal components of LUSC

Considering that tumor MVs form in the altered stroma, we analyzed the correlations of different types of tumor MVs with the features of the stromal and solid components of the tumor. The results are shown in Table 2.

According to the data obtained, the most significant correlations (P < 0.01) were: (1) A negative correlation of MVD density with tumor spread in the AASs; (2) positive correlations of ADC density with the presence of tumor destruction and fragmentation in the tumor solid component and a negative correlation with the presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma; (3) positive correlations of SPEL density with retraction clefts and tumor spread in the AASs; (4) positive correlations of DCs with weak expression of CD34 with LFFC in the tumor stroma; and (5) positive correlations of contact-type DCs with the presence of LFFC in the tumor stroma and the presence of retraction clefts.

Univariate and multivariate logistic regression results

Considering the obtained results, to evaluate the independent predictors associated with the risk of LUSC metastasis in

Table 2 Correlations between different types of tumor microvessels and characteristics of the parenchymal and stromal components of lung squamous cell carcinoma

	Fragmentation in the tumor solid component		The presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma		Retraction clefts		Tumor spread in the AASs	
	Gamma	*P* value	Gamma	*P* value	Gamma	*P* value	Gamma	*P* value
MVD	0.240	0.24	0.034	0.84	0.042	0.79	-0.537	0.002[a]
DCs	0.064	0.66	0.014	0.90	0.211	0.06	-0.251	0.04[a]
ADCs	0.555	0.0006[a]	-0.537	0.0005[a]	0.115	0.45	0.248	0.15
SPELs	0.071	0.65	0.124	0.43	0.517	0.0006[a]	0.435	0.007[a]
DCs with weak expression of CD34	0.297	0.14	0.943	0.0000[a]	0.193	0.21	-0.210	0.22
Contact-type DCs	0.344	0.03[a]	0.502	0.001[a]	0.666	0.0000[a]	-0.077	0.66
The capillaries in the tumor solid component	0.040	0.82	0.009	0.96	0.231	0.16	-0.069	0.72
LVs in lymphoid and polymorphic cell infiltrates	-0.538	0.001[a]	0.054	0.75	0.284	0.07	0.302	0.08

[a]$P < 0.05$, the differences between groups are statistically significant.

AASs: Alveolar air spaces; ADCs: Atypical dilated capillaries; DCs: Dilated capillaries; LFFCT: Loose, fine fibrous connective tissue in the tumor stroma; LVs: Lymphatic vessels; MVD: Microvessel density; SPELs: Structures with partial endothelial lining; CD34: Cluster of differentiation 34.

RLNs and the risk of disease recurrence in the main group of patients, the following predictors were included in the univariate and multivariate analyses: Patient age, tumor location, histology, tumor grade, T stage, N stage, TNM stage, DCs with weak expression of CD34, contact-type DCs, capillaries in the tumor solid component, LFFCT in the tumor stroma, fragmentation in the tumor solid component, retraction clefts and tumor spread through the AASs.

Risk factors for regional lymph node metastases in patients with LUSC

The results of univariate and multifactorial logistic regression analyses of risk factors for RLNM in patients with LUSC are presented in Table 3.

According to the univariate logistic regression analysis, we identified 5 prognostic factors associated with the risk of RLNM, namely, tumor location, T stage, capillaries in the tumor solid component, fragmentation in the solid component of the tumor and retraction clefts. All of these factors, with the exception of T stage, were found to be independent predictors of RLNM. The risk of RLNM was significantly greater in patients with capillaries in the tumor solid component, fragmentation in the tumor solid component and retraction clefts in the tumor tissue and in patients with central LUSC.

We summarized the ORs of the independent predictors for each patient in the main and training groups. For example, for a patient with peripheral LUSC [odds ratio (OR) = 1], capillaries in the solid component of the tumor (OR = 2.72) and retraction clefts (OR = 3.53), without fragmentation in the solid component of the tumor (OR = 1), this number was 8.25 (1 + 2.72 + 3.53 + 1). On the basis of these results, ROC curves were constructed to discriminate between patients with and without RLNM (Figure 3A and B).

For patients in the main cohort, the AUC was 0.784 (DI = 0.71 - 0.915, $P < 0.0001$), and for the training cohort, the AUC was 0.853 (DI = 0.766 - 0.94, $P < 0.0001$). When the OR sum (ORS) was greater than or equal to 12.52 (cutoff), 89 (87.25%) of the 102 patients in the main groups and 23 (100%) of the 23 patients in the training group had metastases in the RLNs. The sensitivity, accuracy and specificity of the method for the main cohort were 66.9%, 68.9% and 72.9%, respectively; for the training cohort, they were 60%, 74.2% and 100%, respectively. Interestingly, in 8 of the 13 patients in the main group with an ORS of 12.52 or more without metastases in RLNs, local (4 patients) or systemic (4 patients) recurrence of the disease was noted within 3 years.

Risk factors associated with LUSC recurrence

The results of univariate and multivariate analyses evaluating the independent factors associated with the risk of LUSC recurrence are presented in Table 4.

According to the univariate logistic regression analysis, we identified 8 prognostic factors associated with the risk of LUSC recurrence, namely, G3, N2 stage, stage IIIA, the presence of adjuvant ChT (A-ChT), the presence of DCs with weak expression of CD34, capillaries in the tumor solid component, LFFCT in the tumor stroma and fragmentation in the tumor solid component, as well as the absence of tumor spread through the AASs. However, only tumor grade 3, N2 stage, the presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma, fragmentation of the tumor solid component, and the absence of tumor spread through the AASs were found to be independent predictors of a high risk of LUSC recurrence.

Table 3 Univariate and multifactorial logistic regression analysis of risk factors for regional lymph node metastases in patients with lung squamous cell carcinoma

Characteristic	Univariate analysis, OR (95%CI)	*P* value	Multivariate analysis, OR (95%CI)	*P* value
Age				
< 60	1	-		
60-69	1.48 (0.71-3.07)	0.291		
≥ 70	0.75 (0.27-2.10)	0.584		
Tumor location				
Peripheral	1	-	1	-
Central	4.77 (2.36-9.63)	0.0000[a]	7.80 (3.33-18.26)	0.0000[a]
Histology				
KSCC	1	-		
NKSCC	0.77 (0.37-1.60)	0.482		
Tumor grade				
G1	1	-		
G2	1.07 (0.50-2.29)	0.858		
G3	0.78 (0.31-1.97)	0.597		
T stage				
T1a	1	-	1	-
T1b	5.50 (0.91-33.18)	0.063	4.93 (0.76-31.78)	0.093
T2a	6.20 (1.42-27.09)	0.015[a]	2.82 (0.59-13.53)	0.195
T2b	9.33 (1.45-60.21)	0.019[a]	5.27 (0.75-37.28)	0.096
T3	5.60 (1.24-25.25)	0.026[a]	1.66 (0.31-8.80)	0.551
DCs with weak expression of CD34				
Absence	1	-		
Presence	1.10 (0.56-2.15)	0.783		
DCs of "contact type"				
Presence	1	-		
Absence	1.67 (0.86-3.25)	0.13		
The capillaries in the tumor solid component				
Absence	1	-	1	-
Presence	2.89 (1.33-6.28)	0.008[a]	2.72 (1.14-6.48)	0.023[a]
LFFCT in the tumor stroma				
Absence	1	-		
Presence	0.70 (0.32-1.55)	0.383		
Fragmentation in the tumor solid component				
Absence	1	-	1	-
Presence	2.55 (1.28-5.06)	0.008[a]	3.03 (1.33-6.94)	0.009[a]
Retraction clefts				
Absence	1	-	1	-
Presence	2.62 (1.33-5.16)	0.005[a]	3.52 (1.56-7.96)	0.003[a]
Tumor spread through the AAS				
Absence	1	-		

Presence	0.72 (0.37-1.42)	0.342

[a]$P < 0.05$, the differences between groups are statistically significant.

AASs: Alveolar air spaces; DCs: Dilated capillaries; KSCC: Keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma; LFFCT: Loose, fine fibrous connective tissue in the tumor stroma; NKSCC: Nonkeratinizing squamous cell carcinoma; OR: Odds ratio.

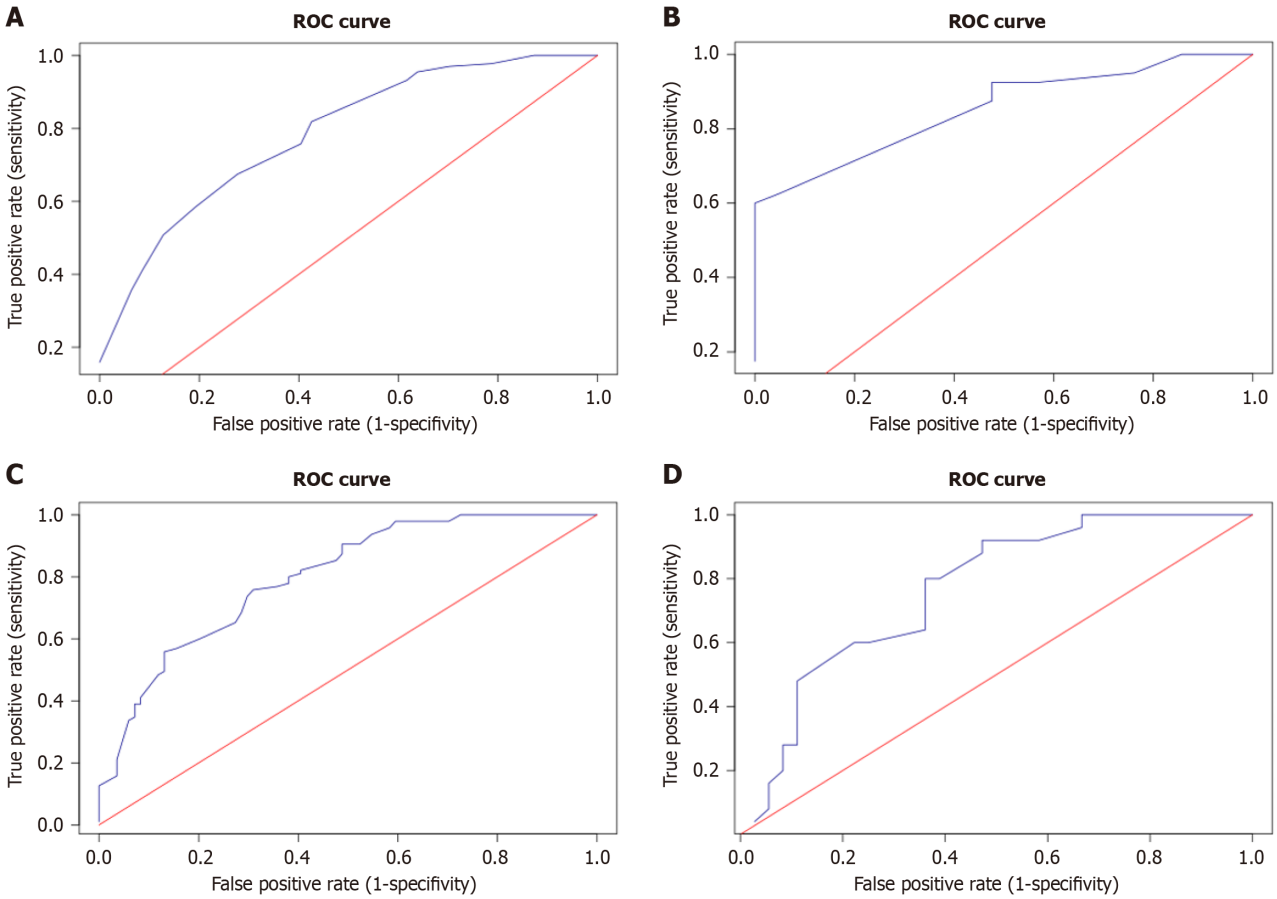


Figure 3 Receiver operating characteristic curves discriminating between patients. A and B: Receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curves discriminating between patients with and without regional lymph node metastases. ROC curve for the main cohort (A); ROC curve for the training cohort (B); C and D: ROC curves discriminating between patients with and without disease recurrence. ROC curve for the main cohort (C); ROC curve for the training cohort (D). ROC: Receiver operating characteristic.

Similarly, we summarized the ORs of independent predictors of the risk of disease recurrence in patients in the main and training groups, and based on the results obtained, we constructed ROC curves that distinguish between patients with and without disease recurrence (Figure 3C and D).

For patients in the main cohort, the AUC was 0.799 (DI = 0.735 - 0.863, $P < 0.0001$), and for the training cohort, the AUC was 0.767 (DI = 0.648 - 0.885, $P < 0.0001$). When the ORS was less than or equal to 12.11 (cutoff), 35 (94.59%) of the 37 patients in the main cohort and 20 (90.91%) of the 22 patients in the training cohort had no LUSC recurrence. The sensitivity, accuracy and specificity of the method for the main cohort were 41.18%, 71.10% and 97.89%, respectively, and those for the training cohort were 54.05%, 69.35% and 92.00%, respectively.

Survival analysis

We analyzed the survival of LUSC patients according to the established predictors of disease recurrence risk. The recurrence free survival (RFS) curves are shown in Figure 4.

The overall survival (OS) curves according to the predictors of a high risk of LC recurrence are shown in Figure 5.

Survival analysis indicated that the OS and disease-free survival (DFS) of patients with LUSC were significantly lower in G3 than in G1 and G2, in N2 than in N0 and N1, and in the presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma and fragmentation in the tumor solid component than in the absence of LFFCT. The best survival rates were observed for patients with an ORS ≤ 12.11. Moreover, the distribution of patients according to LUSC stage did not significantly differ between the groups of patients in whom the ORS was ≤ 12.11 and those in whom the ORS was > 12.11 ($P = 0.483$). In particular, 29.7%, 37.8% and 32.4% of patients in the first group had stage I, II and IIIA LUSC, respectively, and 13.3%, 41.3% and 45.5%, respectively, of patients in the second group. Tumor spread through the AASs had the least effect on DFS and was not

Table 4 Univariate and multivariate analyses for the predictors of disease recurrence in patients with lung squamous cell carcinoma

Characteristic	Univariate analysis, OR (95%CI)	*P* value	Multivariate analysis, OR (95%CI)	*P* value
Age				
< 60	1	-		
60-69	1.87 (0.97-3.58)	0.06		
≥ 70	2.45 (0.89-6.72)	0.082		
Tumor location				
Peripheral	1	-	1	-
Central	1.86 (0.99-3.47)	0.052[a]	1.04	0.92
Histology				
KSCC	1	-		
NKSCC	1.79 (0.94-3.38)	0.075		
Tumor grade				
G1	1	-	1	-
G2	1.51 (0.76-2.95)	0.232	1.36 (0.59-3.01)	0.466
G3	3.44 (1.39-8.48)	0.007[a]	4.24 (1.37-13.14)	0.001[a]
T stage				
T1a	1	-		
T1b	7.00 (1.04-46.95)	0.045[a]		
T2a	4.26 (0.83-21.74)	0.082		
T2b	5.00 (0.79-31.62)	0.087		
T3	3.38 (0.65-17.69)	0.149		
N stage				
N0	1	-	1	-
N1	2.00 (0.97-4.11)	0.059	1.89 (0.81-4.39)	0.137
N2	3.22 (1.37-7.57)	0.007[a]	3.43 (1.26-9.34)	0.016[a]
Stage				
I	1	-	1	-
II	2.17 (0.89-5.27)	0.088	1.87 (0.45-7.69)	0.385
III	3.13 (1.29-7.60)	0.012[a]	3.44 (0.50-23.49)	0.207
Adjuvant therapy				
Radiation therapy	1	-	1	-
Chemo- and radiotherapy	1.41 (0.50-3.97)	0.513	0.57 (0.16-1.98)	0.376
Chemotherapy	3.02	0.008	2.07 (0.78-5.53)	0.146
DCs with weak expression of CD34				
Absence	1	-	1	-
Presence	4.26 (2.25-8.05)	0.0000[a]	1.18 (0.43-3.23)	0.749
Contact-type DCs				
Absence	1	-		
Presence	0.97 (0.54-1.75)	0.934		
The capillaries in the tumor solid component				
Absence	1	-	1	-

Presence	2.32 (1.24-4.35)	0.008[a]	1.20 (0.56-2.59)	0.638
LFFCT in the tumor stroma				
Absence	1	-	1	-
Presence	6.24 (2.85-13.67)	0.0000[a]	7.34 (3.03-17.76)	0.0000[a]
Fragmentation of the tumor solid component				
Absence	1	-	1	-
Presence	3.03 (1.58-5.82)	0.0009[a]	5.23 (2.27-12.07)	0.0001[a]
Retraction clefts				
Absence	1	-		
Presence	0.71 (0.38-1.29)	0.262		
Tumor spread through the AASs				
Presence	1	-	1	-
Absence	2.06 (1.13-3.76)	0.019[a]	3.37 (1.22-5.66)	0.0083[a]

[a]$P < 0.05$, the differences between groups are statistically significant.

AASs: Alveolar air spaces; DCs: Dilated capillaries; KSCC: Keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma; LFFCT: Loose, fine fibrous connective tissue in the tumor stroma; NKSCC: Nonkeratinizing squamous cell carcinoma; OR: Odds ratio; CD34: Cluster of differentiation 34.

associated with OS; moreover, the nonsignificant difference in survival in the training cohort, depending on tumor grade and fragmentation in the tumor solid component, seems to be due to the small number of patients in individual subgroups.

According to multivariate analysis, although the type of adjuvant therapy was not an independent prognostic factor, the 5-year RFS in the absence of adjuvant therapy, with A-ChT, with adjuvant RT (A-RT) and with A-chemoradiotherapy were 64.6%, 30.4%, 57.9% and 47.8%, respectively ($P = 0.0027$). In these groups, 60.4%, 14.6%, 0% and 0% of patients had stage I LUSC; 25.0%, 47.8%, 60.5% and 21.7% had stage II LUSC; and 14.6%, 50.7%, 39.5% and 78.3% had stage IIIA LUSC ($P < 0.0001$).

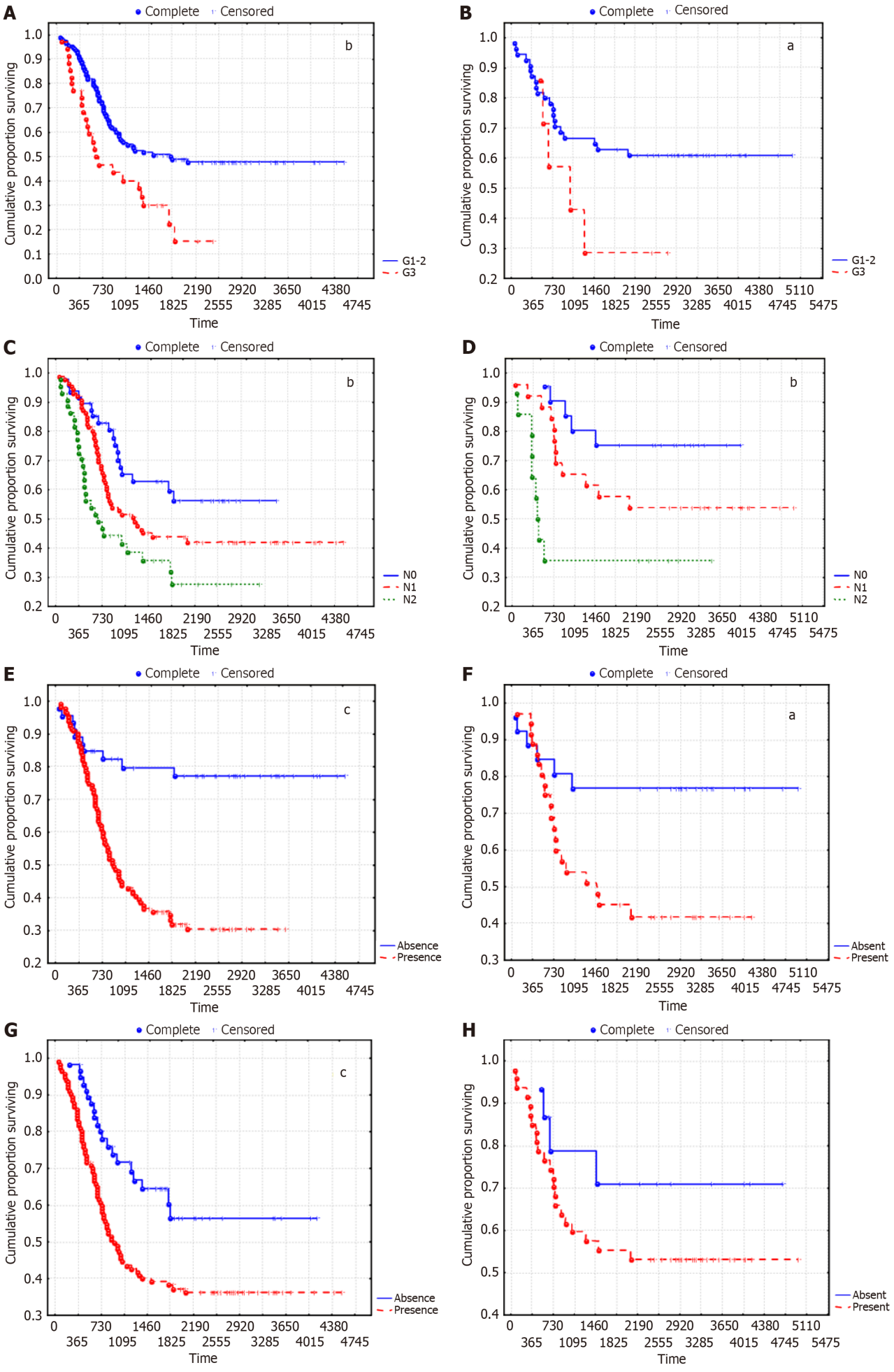
DISCUSSION

LC is an important medical, social and economic problem in most countries worldwide[1,2,31]. Unsatisfactory long-term treatment results for this pathology are associated with late diagnosis, either due to a lack of symptoms in early-stage disease or due to presentation with nonspecific symptoms common with a broad range of alternative diagnoses. According to a large meta-analysis of 78979 R0 resections for NSCLC, the 5-year survival rates ranged from 40% to 74% for stage IA, 38% to 68% for IB, 28% to 53% for stage II, and 18% to 39% for stage IIIA[12]. Thus, early detection of this pathology is critical for reducing mortality in patients with NSCLC.

NSCLC is a very heterogeneous disease. The most common subtypes of NSCLC are adenocarcinoma and LUSC, the incidence of which is 19%–60% and 20%–67.5%, respectively, of the total number of NSCLC cases[4-6]. Despite major breakthroughs in the treatment of lung adenocarcinoma, there are no treatment methods specific for LUSC; as a result, the prognosis of this disease has been poor, especially in the late stages[4,7,8]. The treatment efficacy of LUSC will be largely determined by the choice of optimal treatment regimens and will depend on the sensitivity of the tumor to radiation, ChT and targeted therapy. Thus, determining the risk of disease relapse, including assessing the status of RLNs, is of key importance for choosing the optimal treatment for LUSC. In addition, research in this direction can contribute to understanding the mechanisms of LUSC progression and, consequently, to new approaches for the treatment of this disease.

Currently, angiogenesis is regarded as both an important factor in disease prognosis[15,16] and in the effectiveness of angiogenesis blockers, ChT and targeted therapy[16,20,32-34].

Methodological approaches for assessing angiogenesis in NSCLC vary widely. In most studies, the authors limit themselves to a quantitative assessment of MVD or the level of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) expression. In addition, when calculating the MVD, researchers often consider only normal MVs, *i.e.*, vessels whose lumen does not exceed the diameter of erythrocytes; other types of tumor MVs are excluded from the assessment. As a result of these studies, correlations between MVD and various factors associated with tumor progression have been established; for example, correlations between MVD and the expression of markers such as TFIIB-related factor 2[3], ASK1-interacting protein-1[13] and chitinase 3-like 1[35] in tumor tissue, as well as between MVD and the levels of CXC chemokine ligand 4 in plasma[36]. Several studies have noted a correlation between the prognosis of NSCLC and MVD[37] and between the prognosis of NSCLC and the expression of VEGF-A and angiopoietin-2 (Ang-2)[38]. However, this dependence was observed predominantly for lung adenocarcinoma and not for LUSC. The serum levels of VEGF, Ang-2, and Interleukin-8


A
Complete
Censored
b
Cumulative proportion surviving
Time
G1-2
G3
B
a
C
N0
N1
N2
D
E
c
Absence
Presence
F
Absent
Present
G
H

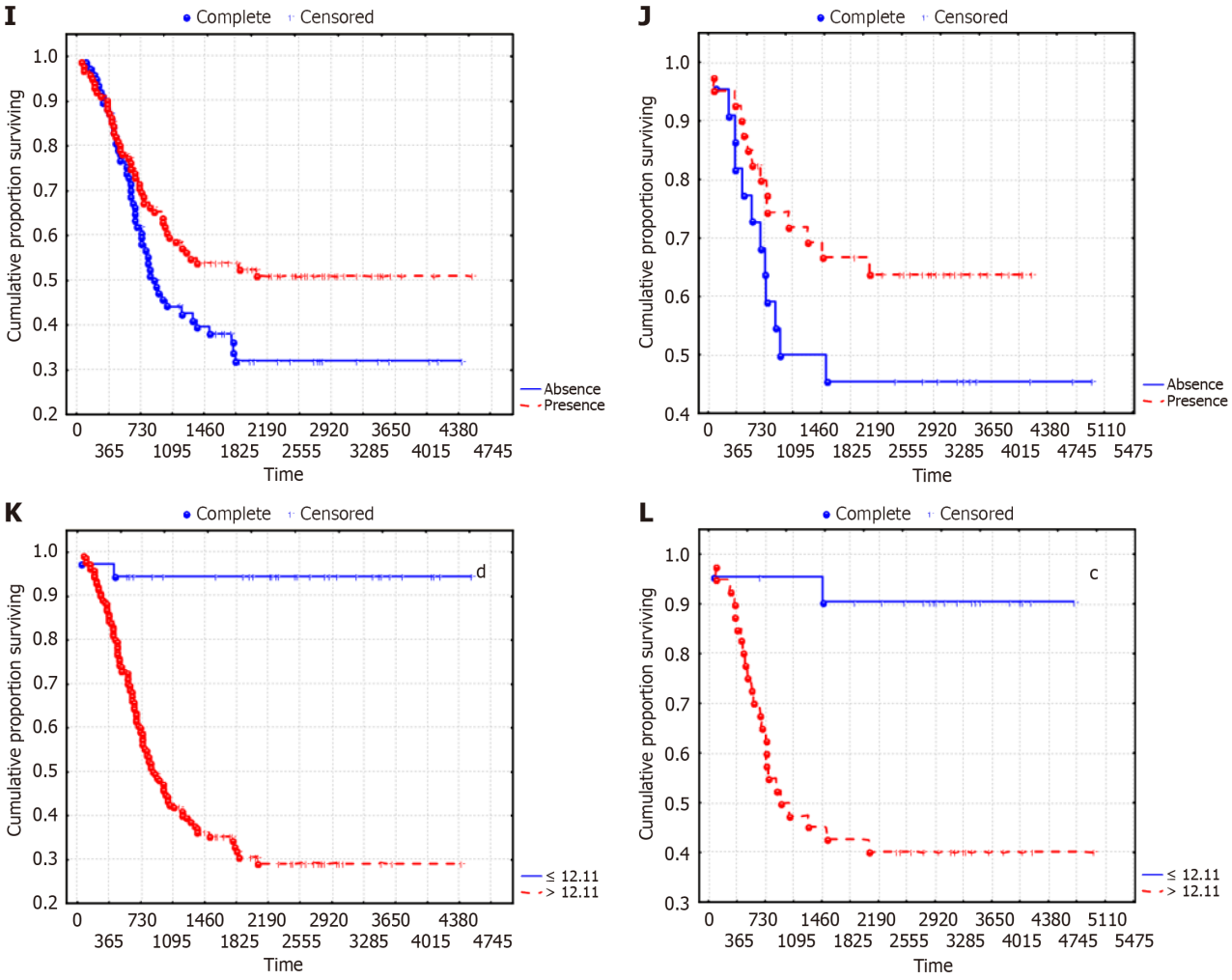


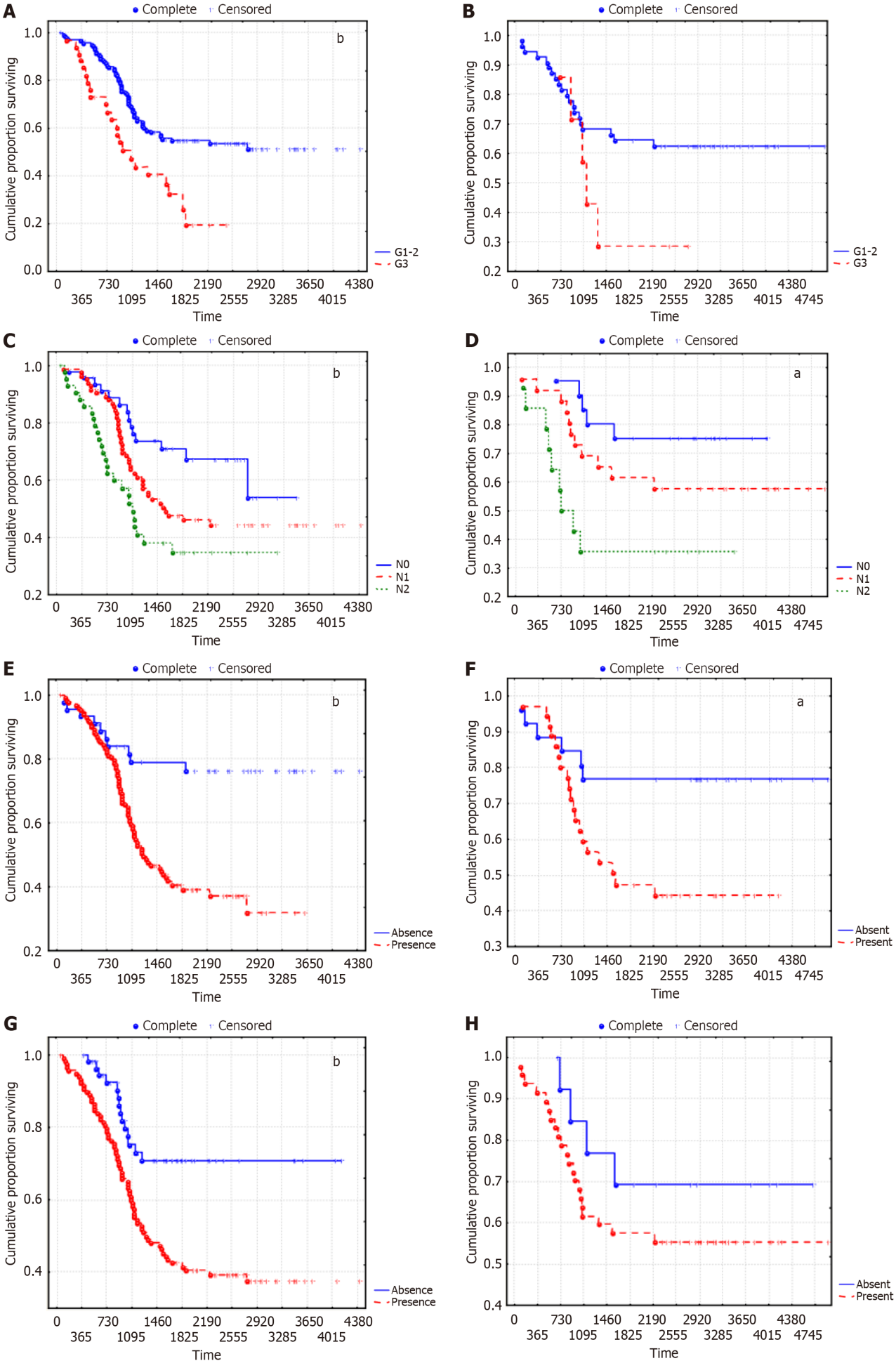
Figure 4 Disease-free survival curves according to the independent predictors of lung squamous cell carcinoma recurrence risk (log-rank test). A and B: Tumor grade; C and D: N stage; E and F: Loose, fine fibrous connective tissue; G and H: Fragmentation of the tumor solid component; I and J: Tumor spread through the alveolar air spaces; K and L: Odds ratio sum (ORS) ≤ 12.11 or ORS > 12.11. A, C, E, G, I and K: Recurrence free survival (RFS) curves for the main cohort of patients; B, D, F, H, J and L: RFS curves for the training cohort of patients. [a]P < 0.05, [b]P < 0.01, [c]P < 0.001, [d]P < 0.0001.

were also not associated with survival in patients with NSCLC[39]. Notably, the assessment of MVD in patients with advanced NSCLC (stage IIIA) using an antibody against CD31 showed that a high MVD is associated with a decrease in the 2-year survival of patients but is not correlated with VEGF-A expression[40].

We believe that the ambiguity of the results obtained may be associated with the heterogeneity of tumor MVs, which differ not only in origin and morphology but also in clinical significance[41,42]. Paulsen *et al*[43], investigating tumor MVs in NSCLC in accordance with the classification proposed by Pezzella *et al*[44], identified three angiogenic subtypes of tumor blood supply, namely, the basal, diffuse and papillary subtypes and the nonangiogenic alveolar subtype[43]. The authors revealed correlations of different vascular patterns with the immune microenvironment of the tumor, the severity of hypoxia and EMF markers. Moreover, the relationships of angiogenic subtypes with clinical and pathological characteristics and the prognosis of NSCLC have not been established. In lung adenocarcinomas, when a nonangiogenic alveolar pattern was detected, there was a significant decrease in patient survival, but in LUSC, such a dependence was not noted[43].

Over the past few years, we have been actively studying the different types of tumor MVs in gastric cancer, breast cancer and cervical cancer[21-23]. In this study, we investigated the features of different types of tumor MVs in LUSC and confirmed the acceptability of the previously proposed classification of tumor MVs. In this study, we also characterized the features of the tumor stromal and parenchymal components as factors that, on the one hand, can influence the formation of certain types of vessels, while on the other hand, different types of tumor vessels can provide the tumor tissue with oxygen and nutrients to different degrees; consequently, they can influence the behavior of the tumor, as well as its tendency to invade and metastasize[45].

The present study established a number of independent predictors associated with the risk of LUSC metastasis in RLNs and the risk of disease recurrence. The first group of predictors included tumor location, the presence of capillaries in the tumor solid component, the presence of fragmentation in the tumor solid component, and the presence of retraction clefts. We summarized the ORs of the independent predictors for each patient and, on the basis of these results, constructed ROC curves that discriminate between patients with and without RLNM. When the ORS was greater than or


A
Complete
Censored
b
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0.0
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
Time
G1-2
G3
B
Complete
Censored
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
4745
Time
G1-2
G3
C
Complete
Censored
b
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
Time
N0
N1
N2
D
Complete
Censored
a
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
4745
Time
N0
N1
N2
E
Complete
Censored
b
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
Time
Absence
Presence
F
Complete
Censored
a
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
4745
Time
Absent
Present
G
Complete
Censored
b
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
Time
Absence
Presence
H
Complete
Censored
Cumulative proportion surviving
1.0
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0
730
1460
2190
2920
3650
4380
365
1095
1825
2555
3285
4015
4745
Time
Absent
Present

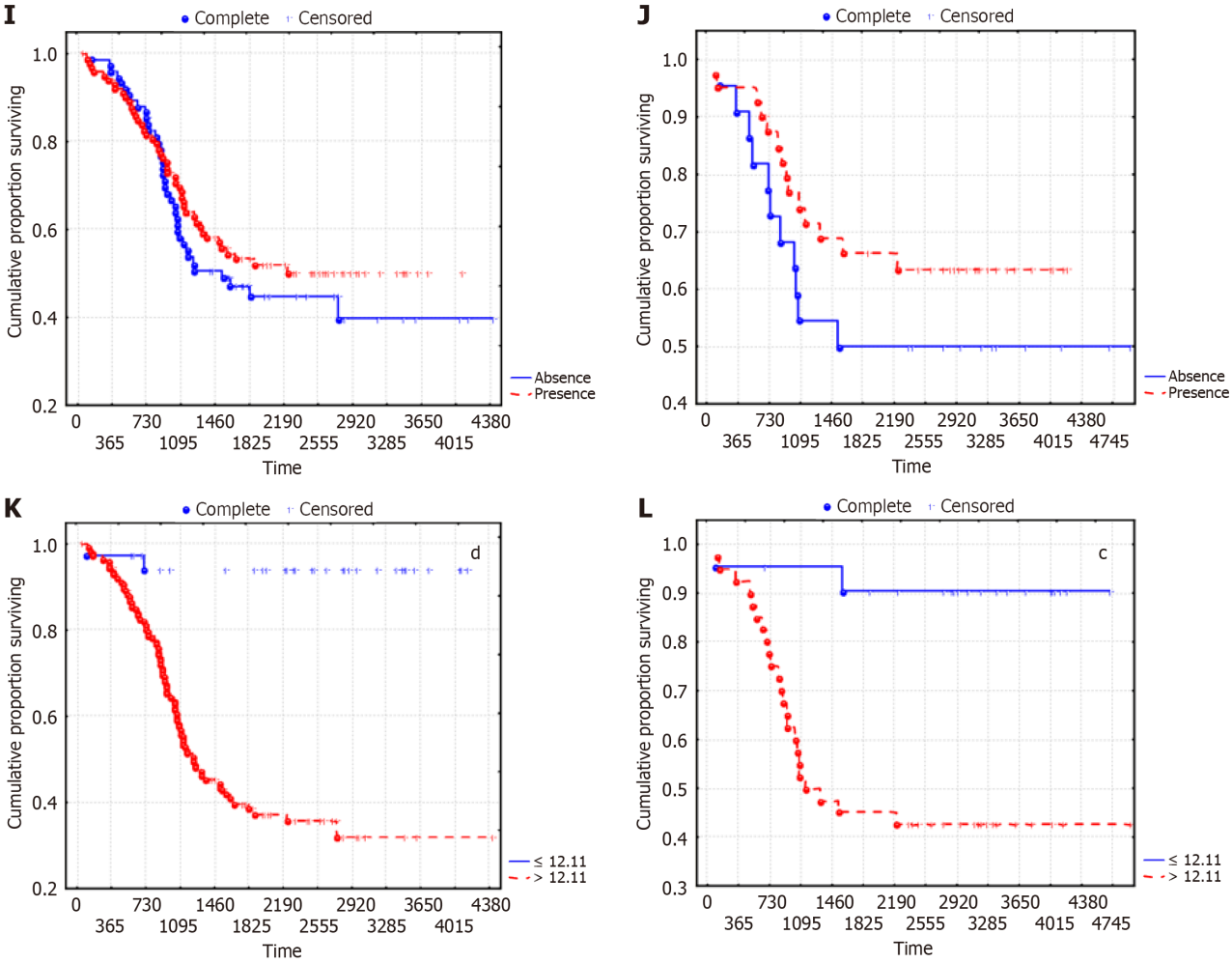


Figure 5 Overall survival curves according to the independent predictors of lung squamous cell carcinoma recurrence risk (log-rank test). A and B: Tumor grade; C and D: N stage; E and F: Loose, fine fibrous connective tissue; G and H: Fragmentation of the tumor solid component; I and J: Tumor spread through the alveolar air spaces; K and L: Odds ratio sum (ORS) ≤ 12.11 or ORS > 12.11. A, C, E, G, I and L: Overall survival (OS) curves for the main cohort of patients; B, D, F, H, J and L: OS curves for the training cohort of patients. [a]P < 0.05, [b]P < 0.01, [c]P < 0.001, [d]P < 0.0001.

equal to 12.52 (cutoff), 89 (87.25%) of the 102 patients in the main cohort and 23 (100%) of the 23 patients in the training cohort had metastases in the RLNs. Furthermore, in 8 out of the 13 patients in the main group with an ORS of 12.52 or more without metastases in RLNs, local (4 patients) or systemic (4 patients) disease recurrence was noted within 3 years.

In turn, tumor grade 3, N2 stage, the presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma, fragmentation in the tumor solid component and tumor spread through the AASs were found to be independent predictors of a high risk of LUSC recurrence. Similarly, the constructed ROC curves made it possible to identify a group of patients with a low risk of LUSC recurrence (less than 90%). When the ORS was less than or equal to 12.11 (cutoff), 35 (94.59%) of the 37 patients in the main cohort and 20 (90.91%) of the 22 patients in the training cohort had no LUSC recurrence.

The main cause of death in cancer patients is metastasis. A number of studies have shown that circulating clusters of tumor cells are associated with a greater risk of metastasis and relapse in NSCLC patients than single circulating tumor cells[46-48]. Previously, we proposed a possible mechanism for the formation of tumor cell clusters in tumor MVs[21]. This mechanism is associated with the retraction of tumor cells from the underlying stroma and the formation of hollow structures with tumor cells in the lumen, which corresponds to the previously described phenomenon of retraction clefts [27,28,29]. Subsequently, the inner surface of the described hollow structures may be partially or completely lined with endothelium. Characteristic features of this stage include the presence of SPELs and vascular invasion with clusters of tumor cells in the lumen. When the formed cavity structures merge with blood or LVs, clusters of tumor cells may enter the blood or lymphatic bed. In gastric cancer, breast cancer and cervical cancer, the presence of retraction clefts and SPELs was correlated with the presence of metastases in RLNs and was associated with a high risk of disease recurrence[21-23]. In a study by Hisakane *et al*[49], a vascular invasion size greater than 425 μm was the most significant factor associated with poor prognosis in patients with stage I LUSC. Tumor cells within larger areas of vascular invasion expressed higher levels of PDPN and cancer stem cell markers; a greater MVD; and greater numbers of CD204 (+) macrophages and α-SMA (+) myofibroblasts than did those within smaller vascular invasion areas[49].

Importantly, increasing evidence suggests that intravasation of single, apoptotic or clusters of tumor cells can occur *via* leaky neoangiogenetic vessels in the tumor core and not by crossing the adjacent tumor stroma after EMT[48]. Hamilton *et al*[48] emphasized that some tumor emboli may be located in blind nonfunctioning tumor vessels, which may limit

their entry into the bloodstream. We believe that these data indirectly confirm the possibility of the formation of circulating clusters of tumor cells by the mechanism of cavity-type angiogenesis described above. Indeed, until the cavity structures merge with the blood and LVs, tumor cell clusters cannot reach the bloodstream. In addition, the large size of tumor emboli may also limit their entry into the bloodstream. For example, in LUSC and squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix, SPELs and vascular invasion with very large tumor emboli (more than 100 μm) were observed in the tumor stroma, the entry of which into the bloodstream is highly questionable.

In our study, we also observed fragmentation of the solid component of the tumor, which was manifested by the appearance of fibroblast-like cells expressing HIF-1α and Snail, indicating its connection with the mechanisms of EMT. According to multivariate analysis, the described phenomenon was an independent predictor of a high risk of LUSC metastasis and disease relapse. Similar results were obtained for squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix[23]. Thus, fragmentation of the solid component of the tumor through EMT may be involved in the intravasation of tumor cells into tumor MVs, thereby promoting the formation of metastases.

Of particular interest is also the association between LFFCT and a high risk of disease relapse. A number of studies have shown that tumor tissue contains several types of noncancerous regenerative cells, including embryonic stem cells, mesenchymal stem cells and adult stem cells. These cells are the source of cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), tumor endothelial cells, and tumor-associated macrophages. These cells play key roles not only in cancer progression but also in the development of drug resistance[50]. It can be assumed that the cells with large pale nuclei and weakly condensed chromatin observed in LFFCT may belong to one of these cell types. In our study, LFFCT was detected predominantly at the invasive margin of the tumor. Several studies have shown that tumor-promoting stromal cells, including PDPN-positive CAFs, CD204-positive tumor-associated macrophages, and CD34+ microvascular cells, are also more frequently recruited to invasive tumor margins[51].

Notably, the majority of the LUSC specimens studied (68%) exhibited tumor spread through AASs. Currently, tumor spread through AASs is regarded as a factor associated with an unfavorable prognosis in patients with NSCLC[52-54]. A decrease in patient survival is likely associated with co-option of the interalveolar septum vessels by the tumor, which leads to a decrease in the effectiveness of systemic therapy due to the development of resistance to antiangiogenic agents and chemotherapy[55,56]. However, in our study, tumor spread through AASs had no significant effect on the survival of patients with LUSC. Moreover, according to multivariate analysis, the absence of tumor spread through the AASs was an independent predictor associated with the risk of LUSC recurrence. It can be assumed that tumor spread through AASs leads to co-option of the vessels of the interalveolar septa by tumors, which, on the one hand, reduces hypoxia in the tumor and the need for the formation of new vessels and, on the other hand, can increase the sensitivity of the LUSC to radiation and chemotherapy. This assumption is supported by the negative correlations of the MVD and density of DCs with tumor spread through AASs. However, this assumption requires verification.

We would also like to note that according to the clinical guidelines for the treatment of NSCLC, A-RT is considered to be a factor associated with worse survival in patients[57]. However, in our study, the five-year survival rate of patients who received A-RT was even greater than that of patients who received A-ChT. We believe that this may be because most studies of NSCLC have not taken tumor histology into account when analyzing the effect of treatment modalities on long-term outcomes. For example, in a meta-analysis by Smeltzer *et al*[12], more than 50% of patients with NSCLC were diagnosed with adenocarcinoma, which is known to be less sensitive to RT than is squamous cell carcinoma. Moreover, it can be assumed that in patients with LUSC, the spread of tumors along AASs can even increase the effectiveness of RT by reducing hypoxia in tumor tissue, which was reflected in the treatment results of patients with LUSC. However, these assumptions require confirmation in clinical studies.

CONCLUSION

Thus, according to the results of this study, the independent predictors associated with a high risk of LUSC metastasis to RLNs are the central location of the tumor, the presence of capillaries in the solid component of the tumor, fragmentation of the tumor solid component, and the presence of peritumoral retraction clefts. In turn, tumor grade 3, N2 stage, the presence of LFFCT in the tumor stroma, fragmentation of the tumor solid component, and absence of tumor spread through the AASs are independent predictors of a high risk of LUSC recurrence. Notably, these results are similar to those obtained when studying different types of tumor vessels in gastric, breast and squamous cell carcinomas of the cervix. This study has several limitations. First, this was a single-center retrospective study; therefore, the results obtained need to be confirmed in other prospective clinical studies. Second, there is a need to standardize the quantitative indicators of the studied markers for their correct use in clinical practice. Third, the small sample size (180 patients) may have led to selection bias despite the use of a fairly homogeneous group of LUSC patients. Thus, future prospective multicenter studies with larger cohorts are needed to further explore the prognostic and predictive significance of different types of tumor MVs in patients with LUSC. Considering the data on the relationship of a certain type of vessel with the characteristics of the stromal and parenchymal components of the tumor, further research in this direction may also be of great scientific and practical interest.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Senchukova MA designed and performed the research, and wrote the paper; Kalinin EA acquired and analyzed the data and contributed substantially to the conception and design of the study; Volchenko NN participated in the discussion of related

data and revised and approved the final version; All the authors wrote and approved the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: This study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of Orenburg State Medical University (Russia, Orenburg), No. 281, dated 30 September 2021.

Informed consent statement: Patients were not required to give informed consent to the study because the study was retrospective and analyses were performed with anonymous clinical data obtained after each patient agreed to treatment *via* written consent.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Data sharing statement: Data from patients included in the study in Statistica10 table or Excel table format can be provided upon request to the corresponding author at masenchukova@yandex.com.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: Russia

ORCID number: Marina A Senchukova 0000-0001-8371-740X; Evgeniy A Kalinin 0000-0001-5329-3589.

S-Editor: Li L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Deng Y**, Peng L, Li N, Zhai Z, Xiang D, Ye X, Hu J, Zheng Y, Yao J, Wang S, Wei B, Xu P, Zhang D, Chen T, Dai Z. Tracheal, bronchus, and lung cancer burden and related risk factors in the United States and China. *Am J Transl Res* 2021; **13**: 1928-1951 [PMID: 34017368]
2 **Sung H**, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global Cancer Statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN Estimates of Incidence and Mortality Worldwide for 36 Cancers in 185 Countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2021; **71**: 209-249 [PMID: 33538338 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21660]
3 **Lu M**, Tian H, Yue W, Li L, Li S, Qi L, Hu W, Gao C, Si L. TFIIB-related factor 2 over expression is a prognosis marker for early-stage non-small cell lung cancer correlated with tumor angiogenesis. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e88032 [PMID: 24523874 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0088032]
4 **Wang W**, Liu H, Li G. What's the difference between lung adenocarcinoma and lung squamous cell carcinoma? Evidence from a retrospective analysis in a cohort of Chinese patients. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2022; **13**: 947443 [PMID: 36105402 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2022.947443]
5 **Tembo MJ**, Kayamba V, Zulu E. Histopathological characterization of lung tumours at the University Teaching Hospital, Lusaka, Zambia: a pilot study. *Afr Health Sci* 2022; **22**: 31-36 [PMID: 37092044 DOI: 10.4314/ahs.v22i4.5]
6 **Mir MH**, Siraj F, Mehfooz N, Sofi MA, Syed NA, Dar NA, Choh NA, Qadri SK, Bhat GM. Clinicopathological Profile of Non-small Cell Lung Cancer and the Changing Trends in Its Histopathology: Experience From a Tertiary Care Cancer Center in Kashmir, India. *Cureus* 2023; **15**: e34120 [PMID: 36843703 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.34120]
7 **Lau SCM**, Pan Y, Velcheti V, Wong KK. Squamous cell lung cancer: Current landscape and future therapeutic options. *Cancer Cell* 2022; **40**: 1279-1293 [PMID: 36270277 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2022.09.018]
8 **Wu R**, Ma R, Duan X, Zhang J, Li K, Yu L, Zhang M, Liu P, Wang C. Identification of specific prognostic markers for lung squamous cell carcinoma based on tumor progression, immune infiltration, and stem index. *Front Immunol* 2023; **14**: 1236444 [PMID: 37841237 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2023.1236444]
9 **Gawełko J**, Cierpiał-Wolan M, Bwanakare S, Czarnota M. Association between Air Pollution and Squamous Cell Lung Cancer in South-Eastern Poland. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 2022; **19** [PMID: 36141870 DOI: 10.3390/ijerph191811598]
10 **Ding Y**, Zhang L, Guo L, Wu C, Zhou J, Zhou Y, Ma J, Li X, Ji P, Wang M, Zhu W, Shi C, Li S, Wu W, Xiao D, Fu C, He Q, Sun R, Mao X, Lizaso A, Li B, Han-Zhang H, Zhang Z. Comparative study on the mutational profile of adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma predominant histologic subtypes in Chinese non-small cell lung cancer patients. *Thorac Cancer* 2020; **11**: 103-112 [PMID: 31692283 DOI: 10.1111/1759-7714.13208]
11 **Kris MG**, Gaspar LE, Chaft JE, Kennedy EB, Azzoli CG, Ellis PM, Lin SH, Pass HI, Seth R, Shepherd FA, Spigel DR, Strawn JR, Ung YC, Weyant M. Adjuvant Systemic Therapy and Adjuvant Radiation Therapy for Stage I to IIIA Completely Resected Non-Small-Cell Lung Cancers: American Society of Clinical Oncology/Cancer Care Ontario Clinical Practice Guideline Update. *J Clin Oncol* 2017; **35**: 2960-2974 [PMID: 28437162 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.72.4401]
12 **Smeltzer MP**, Lin CC, Kong FS, Jemal A, Osarogiagbon RU. Survival impact of postoperative therapy modalities according to margin status in non-small cell lung cancer patients in the United States. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2017; **154**: 661-672.e10 [PMID: 28483267 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2017.03.085]
13 **Chen C**, Geng Q, Sun D, Hu W, Zhong C, Fan L, Song X. Low Expression of ASK1-Interacting Protein-1 Is Significantly Correlated with Tumor Angiogenesis and Poor Survival in Patients with Early Stage Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer. *Onco Targets Ther* 2019; **12**: 10739-10747 [PMID: 31849482 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S222332]
14 **Brascia D**, De Iaco G, Schiavone M, Panza T, Signore F, Geronimo A, Sampietro D, Montrone M, Galetta D, Marulli G. Resectable IIIA-N2

Non-Small-Cell Lung Cancer (NSCLC): In Search for the Proper Treatment. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32722386 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12082050]

15 **Teleanu RI**, Chircov C, Grumezescu AM, Teleanu DM. Tumor Angiogenesis and Anti-Angiogenic Strategies for Cancer Treatment. *J Clin Med* 2019; **9** [PMID: 31905724 DOI: 10.3390/jcm9010084]

16 **Lugano R**, Ramachandran M, Dimberg A. Tumor angiogenesis: causes, consequences, challenges and opportunities. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2020; **77**: 1745-1770 [PMID: 31690961 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-019-03351-7]

17 **Jiang X**, Wang J, Deng X, Xiong F, Zhang S, Gong Z, Li X, Cao K, Deng H, He Y, Liao Q, Xiang B, Zhou M, Guo C, Zeng Z, Li G, Xiong W. The role of microenvironment in tumor angiogenesis. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2020; **39**: 204 [PMID: 32993787 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-020-01709-5]

18 **Zhou W**, Yang L, Nie L, Lin H. Unraveling the molecular mechanisms between inflammation and tumor angiogenesis. *Am J Cancer Res* 2021; **11**: 301-317 [PMID: 33575073]

19 **Hwang I**, Kim JW, Ylaya K, Chung EJ, Kitano H, Perry C, Hanaoka J, Fukuoka J, Chung JY, Hewitt SM. Tumor-associated macrophage, angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis markers predict prognosis of non-small cell lung cancer patients. *J Transl Med* 2020; **18**: 443 [PMID: 33228719 DOI: 10.1186/s12967-020-02618-z]

20 **Chen Y**, Mathy NW, Lu H. The role of VEGF in the diagnosis and treatment of malignant pleural effusion in patients with nonsmall cell lung cancer (Review). *Mol Med Rep* 2018; **17**: 8019-8030 [PMID: 29693703 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2018.8922]

21 **Senchukova M**, Kiselevsky MV. The "cavitary" type of angiogenesis by gastric cancer. Morphological characteristics and prognostic value. *J Cancer* 2014; **5**: 311-319 [PMID: 24723973 DOI: 10.7150/jca.8716]

22 **Senchukova MA**, Nikitenko NV, Tomchuk ON, Zaitsev NV, Stadnikov AA. Different types of tumor vessels in breast cancer: morphology and clinical value. *Springerplus* 2015; **4**: 512 [PMID: 26405632 DOI: 10.1186/s40064-015-1293-z]

23 **Senchukova MA**, Makarova EV, Shurygina EI, Volchenko NN. Morphological Characteristics and Clinical Significance of Different Types of Tumor Vessels in Patients with Stages I-IIA of Squamous Cervical Cancer. *J Oncol* 2020; **2020**: 3818051 [PMID: 32849870 DOI: 10.1155/2020/3818051]

24 **Vermeulen PB**, Gasparini G, Fox SB, Colpaert C, Marson LP, Gion M, Beliën JA, de Waal RM, Van Marck E, Magnani E, Weidner N, Harris AL, Dirix LY. Second international consensus on the methodology and criteria of evaluation of angiogenesis quantification in solid human tumours. *Eur J Cancer* 2002; **38**: 1564-1579 [PMID: 12142044 DOI: 10.1016/s0959-8049(02)00094-1]

25 **Acs G**, Dumoff KL, Solin LJ, Pasha T, Xu X, Zhang PJ. Extensive retraction artifact correlates with lymphatic invasion and nodal metastasis and predicts poor outcome in early stage breast carcinoma. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2007; **31**: 129-140 [PMID: 17197929 DOI: 10.1097/01.pas.0000213316.59176.9b]

26 **Huang L**, Li Y, Du J, Li H, Lu M, Wang Y, Zhou W, Wang W, Wu H. The Prognostic Value of Retraction Clefts in Chinese Invasive Breast Cancer Patients. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2021; **27**: 1609743 [PMID: 34257612 DOI: 10.3389/pore.2021.1609743]

27 **Jain D**, Tikku G, Bhadana P, Dravid C, Grover RK. The Impact of Peritumoral Retraction Clefting & Intratumoral Eosinophils on Overall Survival in Oral Squamous Carcinoma Patients. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2019; **25**: 183-189 [PMID: 29047016 DOI: 10.1007/s12253-017-0328-x]

28 **Acs G**, Khakpour N, Kiluk J, Lee MC, Laronga C. The presence of extensive retraction clefts in invasive breast carcinomas correlates with lymphatic invasion and nodal metastasis and predicts poor outcome: a prospective validation study of 2742 consecutive cases. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2015; **39**: 325-337 [PMID: 25353283 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0000000000000339]

29 **Li W**, Jia H, Wang S, Guo X, Zhang X, Zhang L, Wen HY, Fu L. The presence of retraction clefts correlates with lymphovascular invasion and lymph node metastasis and predicts poor outcome: Analysis of 2497 breast cancer patients. *Ann Diagn Pathol* 2022; **61**: 152047 [PMID: 36156357 DOI: 10.1016/j.anndiagpath.2022.152047]

30 **Džombeta T**, Krušlin B. High Grade T1 Papillary Urothelial Bladder Cancer Shows Prominent Peritumoral Retraction Clefting. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2018; **24**: 567-574 [PMID: 28752222 DOI: 10.1007/s12253-017-0279-2]

31 **Liu C**, Shi J, Wang H, Yan X, Wang L, Ren J, Parascandola M, Chen W, Dai M. Population-level economic burden of lung cancer in China: Provisional prevalence-based estimations, 2017-2030. *Chin J Cancer Res* 2021; **33**: 79-92 [PMID: 33707931 DOI: 10.21147/j.issn.1000-9604.2021.01.09]

32 **Crinò L**, Metro G. Therapeutic options targeting angiogenesis in nonsmall cell lung cancer. *Eur Respir Rev* 2014; **23**: 79-91 [PMID: 24591665 DOI: 10.1183/09059180.00008913]

33 **Janning M**, Loges S. Anti-Angiogenics: Their Value in Lung Cancer Therapy. *Oncol Res Treat* 2018; **41**: 172-180 [PMID: 29631257 DOI: 10.1159/000488119]

34 **Itatani Y**, Kawada K, Yamamoto T, Sakai Y. Resistance to Anti-Angiogenic Therapy in Cancer-Alterations to Anti-VEGF Pathway. *Int J Mol Sci* 2018; **19** [PMID: 29670046 DOI: 10.3390/ijms19041232]

35 **Wang XW**, Cai CL, Xu JM, Jin H, Xu ZY. Increased expression of chitinase 3-like 1 is a prognosis marker for non-small cell lung cancer correlated with tumor angiogenesis. *Tumour Biol* 2015; **36**: 901-907 [PMID: 25304157 DOI: 10.1007/s13277-014-2690-6]

36 **Spaks A**, Svirina D, Spaka I, Jaunalksne I, Breiva D, Tracums I, Krievins D. CXC chemokine ligand 4 (CXCL4) is predictor of tumour angiogenic activity and prognostic biomarker in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients undergoing surgical treatment. *Biomarkers* 2016; **21**: 474-478 [PMID: 27098116 DOI: 10.3109/1354750X.2016.1172111]

37 **Sikora J**, Słodkowska J, Radomyski A, Giedronowicz D, Kobos J, Kupis W, Rudzinski P. Immunohistochemical evaluation of tumour angiogenesis in adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma of lung. *Rocz Akad Med Bialymst* 1997; **42**: 271-279 [PMID: 9337544]

38 **Qin S**, Yi M, Jiao D, Li A, Wu K. Distinct Roles of VEGFA and ANGPT2 in Lung Adenocarcinoma and Squamous Cell Carcinoma. *J Cancer* 2020; **11**: 153-167 [PMID: 31892982 DOI: 10.7150/jca.34693]

39 **Keskin S**, Kutluk AC, Tas F. Prognostic and Predictive Role of Angiogenic Markers in Non- Small Cell Lung Cancer. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2019; **20**: 733-736 [PMID: 30909672 DOI: 10.31557/APJCP.2019.20.3.733]

40 **Bačić I**, Karlo R, Zadro AŠ, Zadro Z, Skitarelić N, Antabak A. Tumor angiogenesis as an important prognostic factor in advanced non-small cell lung cancer (Stage IIIA). *Oncol Lett* 2018; **15**: 2335-2339 [PMID: 29434942 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2017.7576]

41 **Nagy JA**, Dvorak HF. Heterogeneity of the tumor vasculature: the need for new tumor blood vessel type-specific targets. *Clin Exp Metastasis* 2012; **29**: 657-662 [PMID: 22692562 DOI: 10.1007/s10585-012-9500-6]

42 **Fleischer JR**, Jodszuweit CA, Ghadimi M, De Oliveira T, Conradi LC. Vascular Heterogeneity With a Special Focus on the Hepatic Microenvironment. *Front Physiol* 2020; **11**: 591901 [PMID: 33262705 DOI: 10.3389/fphys.2020.591901]

43 **Paulsen EE**, Andersen S, Rakaee M, Pedersen MI, Lombardi AP, Pøhl M, Kilvaer T, Busund LT, Pezzella F, Donnem T. Impact of microvessel patterns and immune status in NSCLC: a non-angiogenic vasculature is an independent negative prognostic factor in lung

adenocarcinoma. *Front Oncol* 2023; **13**: 1157461 [PMID: 37182191 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2023.1157461]

44 **Pezzella F**, Pastorino U, Tagliabue E, Andreola S, Sozzi G, Gasparini G, Menard S, Gatter KC, Harris AL, Fox S, Buyse M, Pilotti S, Pierotti M, Rilke F. Non-small-cell lung carcinoma tumor growth without morphological evidence of neo-angiogenesis. *Am J Pathol* 1997; **151**: 1417-1423 [PMID: 9358768]

45 **Treps L**, Ager A, Hida K. Editorial: Tumor Vessels as Directors of the Tumor Microenvironment: New Findings, Current Challenges & Perspectives. *Front Cell Dev Biol* 2022; **10**: 885670 [PMID: 35425768 DOI: 10.3389/fcell.2022.885670]

46 **Sawabata N**, Susaki Y, Nakamura T, Kawaguchi T, Yasukawa M, Taniguchi S. Cluster circulating tumor cells in surgical cases of lung cancer. *Gen Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2020; **68**: 975-983 [PMID: 32043230 DOI: 10.1007/s11748-020-01308-3]

47 **Sawabata N**, Kawaguchi T, Watanabe T, Yohikawa D, Ouji-Sageshima N, Ito T. Pure Solid Pattern of Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer and Clustered Circulating Tumor Cells. *Cancers (Basel)* 2022; **14** [PMID: 36139672 DOI: 10.3390/cancers14184514]

48 **Hamilton G**, Rath B, Stickler S. Significance of circulating tumor cells in lung cancer: a narrative review. *Transl Lung Cancer Res* 2023; **12**: 877-894 [PMID: 37197632 DOI: 10.21037/tlcr-22-712]

49 **Hisakane K**, Saruwatari K, Fujii S, Kirita K, Umemura S, Matsumoto S, Yoh K, Niho S, Ohmatsu H, Kuwata T, Ochiai A, Gemma A, Tsuboi M, Goto K, Ishii G. Unique intravascular tumor microenvironment predicting recurrence of lung squamous cell carcinoma. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2016; **142**: 593-600 [PMID: 26521256 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-015-2068-1]

50 **Arora L**, Pal D. Remodeling of Stromal Cells and Immune Landscape in Microenvironment During Tumor Progression. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 596798 [PMID: 33763348 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.596798]

51 **Naito M**, Aokage K, Saruwatari K, Hisakane K, Miyoshi T, Hishida T, Yoshida J, Masato S, Kojima M, Kuwata T, Fujii S, Ochiai A, Sato Y, Tsuboi M, Ishii G. Microenvironmental changes in the progression from adenocarcinoma in situ to minimally invasive adenocarcinoma and invasive lepidic predominant adenocarcinoma of the lung. *Lung Cancer* 2016; **100**: 53-62 [PMID: 27597281 DOI: 10.1016/j.lungcan.2016.07.024]

52 **Xie H**, Su H, Zhu E, Gu C, Zhao S, She Y, Ren Y, Xie D, Zheng H, Wu C, Dai C, Chen C. Morphological Subtypes of Tumor Spread Through Air Spaces in Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer: Prognostic Heterogeneity and Its Underlying Mechanism. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 608353 [PMID: 33747923 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.608353]

53 **Yagi Y**, Aly RG, Tabata K, Barlas A, Rekhtman N, Eguchi T, Montecalvo J, Hameed M, Manova-Todorova K, Adusumilli PS, Travis WD. Three-Dimensional Histologic, Immunohistochemical, and Multiplex Immunofluorescence Analyses of Dynamic Vessel Co-Option of Spread Through Air Spaces in Lung Adenocarcinoma. *J Thorac Oncol* 2020; **15**: 589-600 [PMID: 31887430 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtho.2019.12.112]

54 **Mino-Kenudson M**. Significance of tumor spread through air spaces (STAS) in lung cancer from the pathologist perspective. *Transl Lung Cancer Res* 2020; **9**: 847-859 [PMID: 32676351 DOI: 10.21037/tlcr.2020.01.06]

55 **Bridgeman VL**, Vermeulen PB, Foo S, Bilecz A, Daley F, Kostaras E, Nathan MR, Wan E, Frentzas S, Schweiger T, Hegedus B, Hoetzenecker K, Renyi-Vamos F, Kuczynski EA, Vasudev NS, Larkin J, Gore M, Dvorak HF, Paku S, Kerbel RS, Dome B, Reynolds AR. Vessel co-option is common in human lung metastases and mediates resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy in preclinical lung metastasis models. *J Pathol* 2017; **241**: 362-374 [PMID: 27859259 DOI: 10.1002/path.4845]

56 **Coelho AL**, Gomes MP, Catarino RJ, Rolfo C, Lopes AM, Medeiros RM, Araújo AM. Angiogenesis in NSCLC: is vessel co-option the trunk that sustains the branches? *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 39795-39804 [PMID: 26950275 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.7794]

57 **Majem M**, Juan O, Insa A, Reguart N, Trigo JM, Carcereny E, García-Campelo R, García Y, Guirado M, Provencio M. SEOM clinical guidelines for the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer (2018). *Clin Transl Oncol* 2019; **21**: 3-17 [PMID: 30446985 DOI: 10.1007/s12094-018-1978-1]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 635-643

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.635

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 expression level and combined positive score can evaluate efficacy of advanced gastric cancer

Xiao-Ting Ma, Kai Ou, Wen-Wei Yang, Bi-Yang Cao, Lin Yang

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Soldera J, Brazil

Received: January 2, 2024
Revised: February 8, 2024
Accepted: April 2, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Xiao-Ting Ma, Kai Ou, Wen-Wei Yang, Bi-Yang Cao, Lin Yang, Department of Medical Oncology, National Cancer Center/National Clinical Research Center for Cancer/Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing 100021, China

Corresponding author: Lin Yang, MD, Director, Doctor, Department of Medical Oncology, National Cancer Center/National Clinical Research Center for Cancer/Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, No. 17 Panjiayuan Nanli, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100021, China. linyangcicams@126.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Although treatment options for gastric cancer (GC) continue to advance, the overall prognosis for patients with GC remains poor. At present, the predictors of treatment efficacy remain controversial except for high microsatellite instability.

AIM

To develop methods to identify groups of patients with GC who would benefit the most from receiving the combination of a programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1) inhibitor and chemotherapy.

METHODS

We acquired data from 63 patients with human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2)-negative GC with a histological diagnosis of GC at the Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences between November 2020 and October 2022. All of the patients screened received a PD-1 inhibitor combined with chemotherapy as the first-line treatment.

RESULTS

As of July 1, 2023, the objective response rate was 61.9%, and the disease control rate was 96.8%. The median progression-free survival (mPFS) for all patients was 6.3 months. The median overall survival was not achieved. Survival analysis showed that patients with a combined positive score (CPS) ≥ 1 exhibited an extended trend in progression-free survival (PFS) when compared to patients with a CPS of 0 after receiving a PD-1 inhibitor combined with oxaliplatin and tegafur as the first-line treatment. PFS exhibited a trend for prolongation as the expression level of HER2 increased. Based on PFS, we divided patients into two

groups: A treatment group with excellent efficacy and a treatment group with poor efficacy. The mPFS of the excellent efficacy group was 8 months, with a mPFS of 9.1 months after excluding a cohort of patients who received interrupted therapy due to surgery. The mPFS was 4.5 months in patients in the group with poor efficacy who did not receive surgery. Using good/poor efficacy as the endpoint of our study, univariate analysis revealed that both CPS score (P = 0.004) and HER2 expression level (P = 0.015) were both factors that exerted significant influence on the efficacy of treatment the combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy in patients with advanced GC (AGC). Finally, multivariate analysis confirmed that CPS score was a significant influencing factor.

CONCLUSION

CPS score and HER2 expression both impacted the efficacy of immunotherapy combined with chemotherapy in AGC patients who were non-positive for HER2.

Key Words: First line; Gastric cancer; Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; Programmed cell death protein 1; Progression-free survival

Core Tip: For when considering non-positive human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) advanced gastric cancer (AGC), combined positive score and HER2 expression are represent influencing factors for the treatment efficacy of AGC patients receiving immunotherapy combined with chemotherapy. Survival analysis with When using progression-free survival (PFS) as the end point, survival analysis suggested that the HER2 expression level was levels are suggestive of the efficacy of treatment featuring a programmed cell death protein 1 inhibitor combined with and chemotherapy. With the increase of HER2 expression, PFS also showed a tendency to prolong increase with an increase in HER2 expression.

Citation: Ma XT, Ou K, Yang WW, Cao BY, Yang L. Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 expression level and combined positive score can evaluate efficacy of advanced gastric cancer. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 635-643
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/635.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.635

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) is one of the most common forms of malignant tumor with the fifth highest incidence of cancer in the world; in addition, GC ranks third in terms of global fatalities from cancer, thus representing a serious threat to population health[1]. Surgical resection remains as the main radical treatment for GC at present. However, most patients with GC are in advanced stages of the disease at diagnosis; consequently, < 50% of patients can achieve R0 resection. A previous study reported that > 80% of GC patients are diagnosed at an advanced stage, and most are accompanied by extensive invasion and distant metastasis, thus missing the opportunity for radical surgery[2]. Despite the continuous progression of treatment options for GC, the overall prognosis for GC remains poor, traditional chemotherapy drugs have entered a bottleneck period, and the selection of targeted drugs is limited.

Over recent years, immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs), such as programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1)/programmed cell death 1 Ligand 1 (PD-L1) inhibitors or cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4 inhibitors, have become the main treatment options for many types of cancer. For the first-line treatment of advanced GC (AGC), the combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy has gradually become the new standard mode of treatment. Multiple clinical studies have reported that approximately 85% of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2)-negative (HER2 IHC 0 or 1+ or 2+/FISH-) patients achieved efficacious results following first-line treatment involving the combination of a PD-1 antibody and chemotherapy in the first-line treatment of AGC *via* the administration of ICIs and different chemotherapy regimens, when considering the comprehensive positive score (CPS) of PD-L1 expression on immunohistochemistry and different research endpoint indicators[3-6]. However, not all patients can benefit from treatment based on PD-1 inhibitors. In addition to the clear status of high microsatellite instability, the predictive value of the PD-L1 CPS score remains controversial, and other predictive factors, such as high tumor mutational burden, remain uncertain. Therefore, there is a clear need to develop a method to identify groups of patients with AGC who might benefit the most from the combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy.

In this study, we analyzed the efficacy of a first-line PD-1 inhibitor combined with chemotherapy in patients with AGC. We aimed to identify relevant risk factors that can predict treatment efficacy in order to provide a method to identify potential beneficiaries as early as possible and provide a basis for clinical practice.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patient population

We reviewed and collected data from 63 patients with HER2-negative patients with AGC who were diagnosed histologically at the Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences from November 2020 to October 2022 (Table 1). All patients had proficient mismatch repair (pMMR). These patients were treated with oxaliplatin and tegafur (SOX) chemotherapy combined with tislelizumab (a PD-1 monoclonal antibody). All patients were at least 18 years of age and had measurable lesions according to the RECIST 1.1 criteria. The initial TNM staging was stage IV or recurrence and metastasis after radical surgery. Common distant metastatic sites included retroperitoneal lymph nodes, supraclavicular lymph nodes, peritoneum, liver, and ovaries. Patients with initial stage IV had not previously received anti-tumor therapy, and patients with postoperative recurrence had an interval of more than 6 months between adjuvant treatment after radical resection. The main exclusion criteria included previous chemotherapy or targeted therapy, ICI treatment history (excluding patients with recurrence and metastasis more than 6 months after adjuvant or neoadjuvant chemotherapy), and other malignant tumors over the previous 5 years (excluding radical cervical cancer, skin squamous cancer, or basal-cell carcinoma).

This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of the National Cancer Center/Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences, and Peking Union Medical College.

Treatment plan

All of the selected patients received tislelizumab combined with chemotherapy every 3 wk. The specific dose of SOX regimen was 130 mg/m^2 oxaliplatin (2 h intravenous infusion) on day 1, and tegafur was taken orally at doses of 80 mg, 100 mg, or 120 mg/d (< 1.25 m^2, 1.25 to 1.5 m^2, or > 1.5 m^2) depending on body surface area, on days 1 to 14. Tislelizumab was given every 3 wk at a standard dose of 200 mg. If the combination treatment reached six cycles, we continued to maintain tegafur combined with tislelizumab after stopping oxaliplatin. The clinicians followed institutional guidelines for the use of premedication anti-emetics and growth factors. The dose of the chemotherapy regimen was reduced at the discretion of the clinicians. Some patients who were evaluated as operable by multi-disciplinary treatment after chemotherapy underwent radical gastrectomy.

Evaluation indicators

We collected the following baseline demographic and clinical data: age, sex, performance status (PS) score, primary cancer site, metastatic organs, HER2 expression level, PD-L1 CPS score[7], Epstein-Barr virus-encoded small RNA (EBER) status, treatment plan and drug dosage adjustment, all of which were recorded in our medical record system.

All patients underwent tumor imaging examinations (computed tomography and/or magnetic resonance imaging) every two cycles, and were evaluated according to the response evaluation criteria in solid tumors 1.1 criteria. Objective response rate (ORR) was defined as the sum of the proportions of complete remission (CR) and partial remission (PR). Disease control rate (DCR) was defined as the proportion (%) of patients who achieved remission (PR + CR) and stable disease following treatment. Progression-free survival (PFS) was defined as the time from the beginning of chemotherapy to the date of imaging confirmation of disease progression or the date of radical surgical resection, or the time of death from any cause before disease progression (whichever came first). Overall survival (OS) was defined as the time from the beginning of chemotherapy to death due to any cause.

Statistical analysis

Data were statistically analyzed with R-language. PFS was estimated by Kaplan-Meir survival curve analysis. The Cox proportional risk model was used to estimate the risk ratio. All statistical tests were bidirectional, and P value of < 0.05 was considered significant. Logistic regression model analysis was performed to determine whether gender, age, PS score, PD-L1 CPS score, HER2 expression, EBER expression, and the number of distant metastasized organs were risk factors for efficacy. The Kruskal-Wallis test was used to analyze the variance of all patients after two cycles of treatment.

RESULTS

Patient characteristics

The clinical and pathological features of the patients included in this study are shown in Table 1. As of July 1, 2023, all patients had been followed-up for more than 6 months from enrollment to date. A total of 63 patients were included in this study, including 34 males and 29 females. The initial diagnosis was stage IV in 56 patients and postoperative recurrence occurred in seven patients. The included patients ranged in age from 27 to 76 years, with a mean and median age of 54 and 56 years, respectively. PS score ranged from 0 to 2. Distant sites of metastasis mainly included the liver, peritoneum, ovary and distant lymph nodes. pMMR status was determined by immunohistochemistry. HER2 was either not expressed or expressed at low levels (1+/2+ and FISH was not amplified). EBER status and PD-L1 CPS score were also determined by immunohistochemistry.

Efficacy

As of the July 1, 2023, the numbers of patients experiencing disease progression and death were 40 and 17, respectively. The ORR was 61.9% (range: 48.8%-73.4%) and the DCR was 96.8% (range: 89.0%-99.6%). The median PFS (mPFS) for the

Table 1 Baseline characteristics, *n* (%)

Variable	All (63)	Excellent efficacy group (42)	Poor efficacy group (21)
Age	56 (51, 58)	56 (50, 58)	59 (50, 62)
Sex			
Male	34 (54.7)	20 (47.6)	14 (66.7)
Female	29 (45.3)	22 (52.4)	7 (33.3)
ECOG-PS			
0	17 (27.0)	12 (28.6)	5 (23.8))
1	39 (61.9)	26 (61.9)	13 (61.9)
2	7 (11.1)	4 (9.5)	3 (14.3)
Disease status			
Unresectable	55 (87.3)	38 (90.5)	17 (81.0)
Recurrent	8 (12.7)	4 (9.5)	4 (19.0)
Number of organs involved			
1	40 (63.5)	27 (64.3)	13 (61.9)
≥ 2	23 (36.5)	15 (35.7)	8 (38.1)
HER2 status			
0	31 (49.2)	17 (40.5)	14 (66.7)
1	15 (23.8)	10 (23.8)	5 (23.8)
2	11 (17.5)	11 (26.2)	0 (0)
Unmeasured	6 (9.5)	4 (9.5)	2 (9.5)
CPS			
0	8 (12.7)	2 (4.8)	6 (28.6)
1 ≤ CPS < 5	11 (17.5)	7 (16.7)	4 (19.0)
5 ≤ CPS < 10	12 (19.0)	9 (21.4)	3 (14.3)
CPS ≥ 10	21 (33.3)	18 (42.9)	3 (14.3)
Unmeasured	11 (17.5)	6 (14.3)	5 (23.8)
EBER			
Positive	7 (11.1)	6 (14.3)	1 (4.8)
Negative	42 (66.7)	26 (61.9)	16 (76.2)
Unmeasured	14 (22.2)	10 (23.8)	4 (19.0)

ECOG-PS: Eastern cooperative oncology group-performance status; CPS: Combined positive score; HER2: Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; EBER: Epstein-Barr virus-encoded small RNA.

entire cohort was 6.3 months (range: 6.0-7.8 months). The median OS was not attained. Survival analysis was performed for patient age, sex, PS score, PD-L1 CPS score, HER2 expression, EBER status, and number of metastatic organs (Figure 1). Analysis showed that patients with a CPS ≥ 1 showed an extended trend in PFS when compared to the population of patients with a CPS score of 0 after receiving a PD-1 inhibitor combined with chemotherapy as the first-line treatment (P = 0.06). PFS exhibited a trend for prolongation as the expression level of HER2 increased (P = 0.074).

Predictive effect of clinicopathological factors on immunotherapy efficacy in patients with GC

We divided patients into two groups based on their mPFS: A treatment group with excellent efficacy and a treatment group with poor efficacy. The excellent efficacy group included patients with a PFS > 6.3 months, or those who met surgical standards (the primary lesion was resectable and the metastases were indistinct) within 6.3 months and achieved radical resection. The poor efficacy group included patients with a PFS not exceeding 6.3 months or those who died from any cause within 6.3 months. The two sets of baseline characteristics are shown in Table 1.

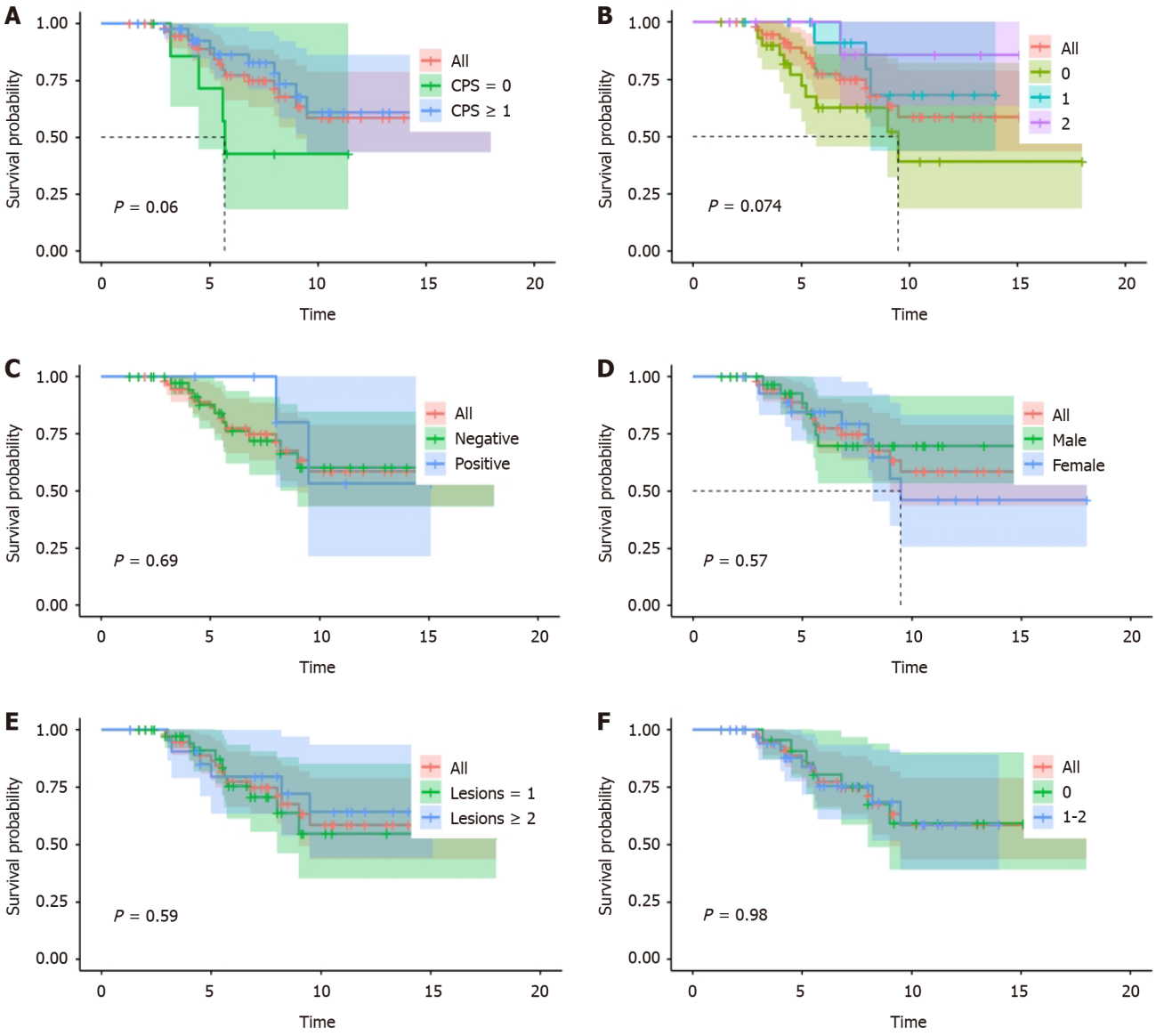


Figure 1 Progression-free survival of clinicopathological factors. A: The progression-free survival (PFS) of different combined positive scores of programmed cell death 1 ligand 1; B: PFS according to different human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 expression levels; C: PFS according to Epstein-Barr virus-encoded small RNA status; D: PFS according to patient gender; E: PFS according to different numbers of metastatic organs; F: PFS according to different performance status scores.

The mPFS of the excellent efficacy group was 8 months (range: 6.9-9.2 months and 16 patients underwent surgery in this group. Excluding those who experienced an interruption of immunotherapy due to surgery, the remaining 26 patients had a mPFS of 9.1 months (range: 8.8-11.1 months). Patients in the group with poor efficacy who did not receive surgery had a mPFS of 4.5 months (range: 3.7-4.9 months).

Next, we attempted to identify risk factors by analyzing patient age, sex, PS score, PD-L1 CPS score, HER2 expression, EBER status, and the number of metastatic organs. Univariate analysis revealed that age, sex, PS score, EBER status, and number of metastatic organs were not significant factors influencing the efficacy of AGC patients receiving a combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy. However, CPS score (P = 0.004) and HER2 expression (P = 0.015) were identified as factors influencing the efficacy of AGC patients receiving a combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy (Figure 2). The therapeutic effect of a CPS ≥ 1 was significantly better than that of a CPS = 0, and the therapeutic effect of a CPS ≥ 5 was significantly better than that of a CPS < 5. However, no significant difference in efficacy was detected between the two groups with a CPS ≥ 10 when compared with patients with a CPS < 10. The higher the expression of HER2, the better the therapeutic effect. Multivariate analysis further suggested that CPS score was a factor influencing the efficacy of AGC patients receiving a combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy, further confirming the role of CPS score in predicting the efficacy of immunotherapy in GC patients (Supplementary material).

The predictive effect of short-term objective remission on immunotherapy efficacy in patients with GC

Finally, we analyzed the objective efficacy of all patients after two cycles of treatment, with excellent/poor efficacy as the research endpoint. Of the 42 patients in the excellent efficacy group, 30 patients achieved PR after two cycles of treatment,

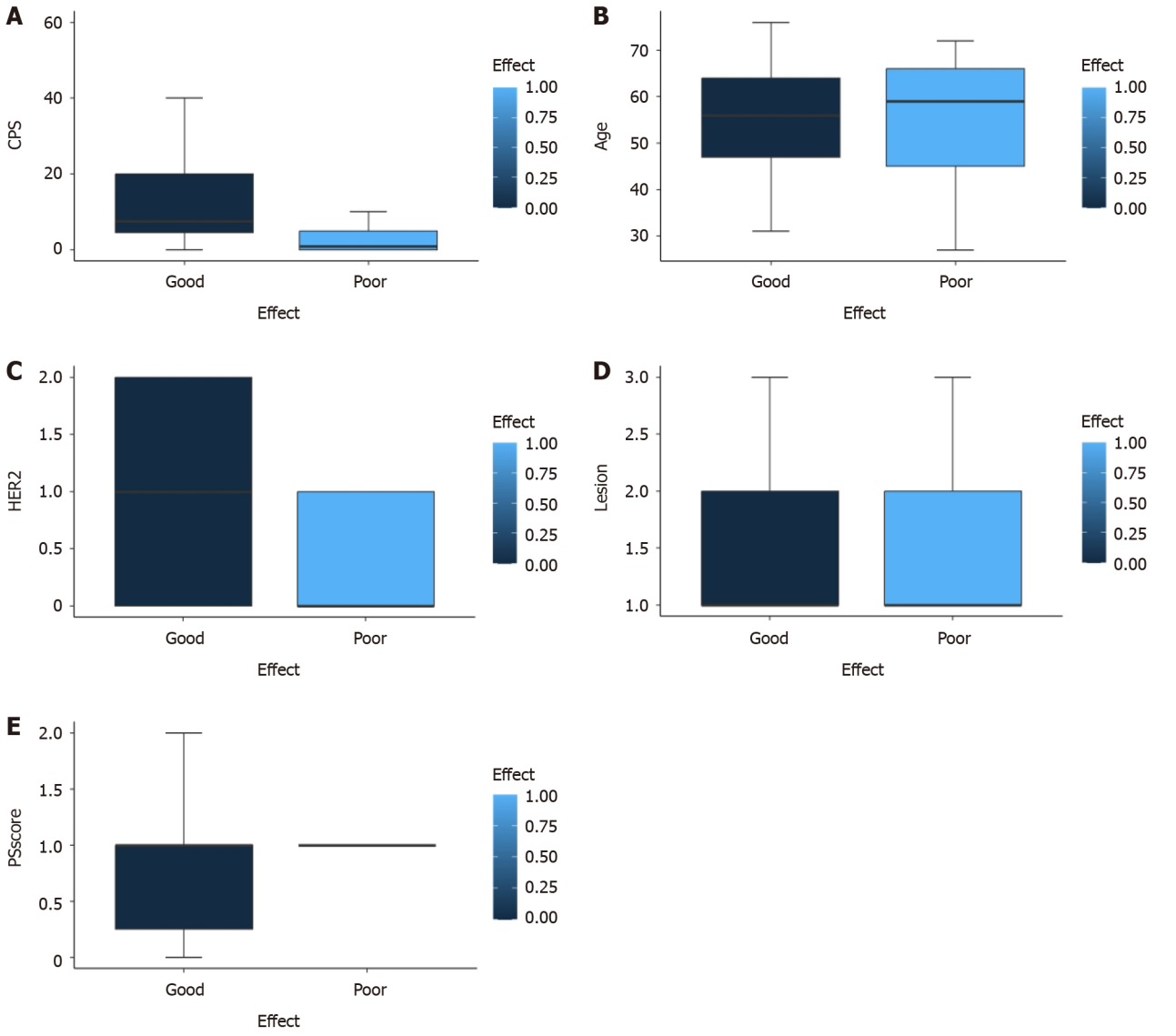


Figure 2 Risk factor analysis of clinicopathological factors. A: Risk factor analysis of programmed cell death 1 Ligand 1 combined positive score scores; B: Risk factor analysis of patient age; C: Risk factor analysis of different numbers of metastatic organs; D: Risk factor analysis of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 expression; E: Risk factor analysis of performance status scores. PS: Performance status; CPS: Combined positive score; HER2: Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2.

with an ORR of 71.4% (range: 55.4%-84.3%). Of the 21 individuals in the poor efficacy group, nine achieved PR after two cycles of treatment, with an ORR of 42.9% (range: 21.8%-66.0%). There was a significant difference between the two groups in terms of ORR (P = 0.029) (Table 2). These findings suggested that patients who achieved PR in the first efficacy evaluation after two cycles of treatment were more likely to experience PFS for more than 6 months or have the opportunity for radical surgery.

DISCUSSION

In this study, we found that HER2-negative, pMMR AGC, patients with a CPS ≥ 1 experienced significantly better treatment efficacy and a longer PFS when compared to those with a CPS of 0. Furthermore, PFS also exhibited a trend for prolongation as the expression level of HER2 increased.

HER2 is an important member of the ERBB family of receptors encoded by the *ERBB2* gene, and can bind to other family members to form heterodimers and transmit proliferation and survival signals to cells by activating the downstream RAS-RAF-MEK-ERK or P13K-AKT-mTOR pathways. When cells overexpress HER2 or exert increased functionality, excessive cell proliferation signals can be transmitted downstream; this can lead to tumor formation[8]. At present, the prognostic value of HER2 status in GC remains controversial. Some studies have reported that HER2 positivity is a poor prognostic factor, while other studies have linked HER2 to better survival; other studies have reported that there is no association between HER2 and patient survival[9-11]. Continuous advancement in the field of precision therapy and the advent of ADC drugs has redefined HER2 expression into different classifications: HER2-negative (IHC

Table 2 Best overall response (patients with measurable lesions)

	Group A (*N* = 42)		Group B (*N* = 21)		*P* value
	n (%)	95%CI	*n* (%)	95%CI	
Best overall response					
Complete response (CR)	0	-	0	-	-
Partial response (PR)	30 (71.4)	-	9 (42.9)	-	-
Stable disease (SD)	12 (28.6)	-	10 (47.6)	-	-
Progressive disease	0 (0)	-	2 (9.5)	-	-
Overall response rate (CR + PR)	30 (71.4)	55.4-84.3	9 (42.9)	21.8-66.0	0.03
Disease control rate (CR + PR + SD)	42 (100)	91.6-1.00	19 (90.5)	69.6-98.8	2.527e-13

N: The total number of subjects in the treatment group. It is the denominator for percentage (%) calculation. *n*: Number of subjects who are at the corresponding category. The exact 95%CI for the frequency distribution of each variable were computed using Clopper and Pearson method.

0), HER2-low expression (IHC 1+/2+ and FISH negative) and HER2-positive (IHC 3+ or 2+ and FISH positive). Zhang *et al*[12] analyzed the clinical characteristics and prognosis of these HER2 expression subtypes in breast cancer and found that when compared with patients who were HER2-negative, those with low levels of HER2 expression were more inclined to express low levels of Ki67 and have a better trend for long-term survival. Previous data analysis of 2310 non-HER2-amplified patients showed that breast cancer patients with low levels of HER2 expression were significantly different from those who were HER2-negative in terms of biological behavior, clinicopathological features, treatment response, and clinical outcomes[13]. According to previous studies, low levels of HER2 expression account for 40% to 60% of all GC patients[14]. In a study involving patients with stage III GC, Gao *et al*[15] reported that the prognosis of patients with an HER2 score of 1 or 2+ was significantly better than that of patients with an HER2 score of 0 or 3+. In addition, most previous studies focused on the relationship between HER2 and tumor cell growth and apoptosis; relatively few studies have been conducted on the role of HER2 with respect to the immune cycle of tumors and the role of immunotherapy.

The tumor immune microenvironment is composed of various immune cells and immune-active substances. Tumor infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs), macrophages, and neutrophils are the main immune cells that are found in the tumor microenvironment. PD-1/PD-L1 is considered an important pathway for immune escape in tumor cells. Changes in the immune microenvironment play an important role in the recurrence and metastasis of GC patients, and PD-L1 positivity has also been proven to be sensitive to immunotherapy. The immune response of the body to tumors mainly involves CD8+T cells, which infiltrate into tumor tissue and participate in the tumor immune cycle[16,17]. In the early stages of disease, the body can clear tumors by immune monitoring functionality; tumor cells can also suppress the immune system by immune editing functionality, and even evade immune system attacks *via* a range of different mechanisms[18]. No studies have directly analyzed the tumor-associated immune environment associated with low levels of HER2 expression and HER2-negative expression. However, a previous study involving breast ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS), researchers found that the densities of intraepithelial lymphocytes, CD3+T cells, CD3+CD8 T cells, CD3+FOXP3+T cells and CD8+Ki67+T cells in HER2 positive DCIS were significantly higher than those of immune cell subsets in HER2-negative DCIS ($P < 0.05$)[19]. In another study, Mutka *et al*[20] reported that HER2-positive tumors had more TILs.

In the present study, the included population were all HER2-negative or HER2-low expression patients. We conducted subgroup analysis of our patient population. Multivariate analysis demonstrated that the expression levels of HER2 did not present an independent risk factor. However, survival analysis, using PFS as the endpoint, still indicated the predictive effect of HER2 expression on the efficacy of treatments involving a PD-1 inhibitor combined with chemotherapy. However, some previous reports contradicted our current findings. Some studies have found that HER2 bound to the carboxyl end tail of STING, and inhibited TBKL activity by phosphorylating specific positions of AKTl, thus preventing STING from binding to TBKL and inhibiting anti-tumor immune activity. These findings suggest that the level and activity of HER2 in tumor cells may also be a decisive factor in controlling immune perception ability[21-23]. Therefore, the relationship between HER2 expression level and the tumor immune environment needs to be further investigated by clinical research and basic scientific experiments with larger data sets.

Multiple large phase III randomized controlled studies have confirmed the efficacy of immunotherapy combined with chemotherapy for non-positive HER2 AGC; the most recent published data state that the mPFS is around 7 months[3-6]. Our study differed from other studies in that we directly used the PFS of the patient population as the cut-off point and the outcome endpoint as the binary variable to analyze efficacy. In addition, we also analyzed efficacy for all patients receiving two cycles of treatment to determine the predictive value of the first efficacy evaluation after treatment for subsequent efficacy.

There were some limitations to this study that need to be considered. First, the small sample size of patients and the lack of sufficient universality in a study based in a single center made it difficult to generalize our findings. Second, the small sample size caused by sub-grouping limited further subgroup analysis. In the future, we will conduct a multi-center study with a larger cohort to further validate our findings.

CONCLUSION

Analysis showed that CPS score and HER2 expression were both influencing factors for the efficacy of AGC patients who were non-positive for HER2 and receiving immunotherapy combined with chemotherapy. Multivariate analysis further confirmed the role of CPS score in predicting the efficacy of immunotherapy in patients with GC. Survival analysis, using PFS as the end point, suggested that the level of HER2 expression was suggestive of the efficacy of treatment involving the combination of a PD-1 inhibitor and chemotherapy. Finally, PFS showed a tendency to increase with an increased expression level of HER2.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Ma XT designed the article form and wrote the manuscript; Ou K, Yang WW and Cao BY consulted and browsed the literature; Yang L revised the manuscript and provided the funding. All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Supported by Beijing CSCO Clinical Oncology Research Foundation, No. Y-HH202102-0314.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of National Cancer Center/National Clinical Research Center for Cancer/Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College.

Informed consent statement: As the study used anonymous and pre-existing data, the requirement for the informed consent from patients was waived.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Xiao-Ting Ma 0000-0003-1329-9761; Wen-Wei Yang 0000-0002-7292-5980; Lin Yang 0000-0002-4829-3119.

S-Editor: Qu XL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Yuan YY

REFERENCES

1 **de Mello RA**, Amaral GA, Neves NM, Lippo EG, Parini F, Xu S, Tolia M, Charalampakis N, Tadokoro H, Castelo-Branco P, Zhu J. Current and potential biomarkers in gastric cancer: a critical review of the literature. *Future Oncol* 2021; **17**: 3383-3396 [PMID: 34291647 DOI: 10.2217/fon-2021-0084]

2 **Cervantes A**, Roda D, Tarazona N, Roselló S, Pérez-Fidalgo JA. Current questions for the treatment of advanced gastric cancer. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2013; **39**: 60-67 [PMID: 23102520 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2012.09.007]

3 **Shitara K**, Van Cutsem E, Bang YJ, Fuchs C, Wyrwicz L, Lee KW, Kudaba I, Garrido M, Chung HC, Lee J, Castro HR, Mansoor W, Braghiroli MI, Karaseva N, Caglevic C, Villanueva L, Goekkurt E, Satake H, Enzinger P, Alsina M, Benson A, Chao J, Ko AH, Wainberg ZA, Kher U, Shah S, Kang SP, Tabernero J. Efficacy and Safety of Pembrolizumab or Pembrolizumab Plus Chemotherapy vs Chemotherapy Alone for Patients With First-line, Advanced Gastric Cancer: The KEYNOTE-062 Phase 3 Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: 1571-1580 [PMID: 32880601 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2020.3370]

4 **Janjigian YY**, Shitara K, Moehler M, Garrido M, Salman P, Shen L, Wyrwicz L, Yamaguchi K, Skoczylas T, Campos Bragagnoli A, Liu T, Schenker M, Yanez P, Tehfe M, Kowalyszyn R, Karamouzis MV, Bruges R, Zander T, Pazo-Cid R, Hitre E, Feeney K, Cleary JM, Poulart V, Cullen D, Lei M, Xiao H, Kondo K, Li M, Ajani JA. First-line nivolumab plus chemotherapy versus chemotherapy alone for advanced gastric, gastro-oesophageal junction, and oesophageal adenocarcinoma (CheckMate 649): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2021; **398**: 27-40 [PMID: 34102137 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(21)00797-2]

5 **Kang YK**, Chen LT, Ryu MH, Oh DY, Oh SC, Chung HC, Lee KW, Omori T, Shitara K, Sakuramoto S, Chung IJ, Yamaguchi K, Kato K, Sym SJ, Kadowaki S, Tsuji K, Chen JS, Bai LY, Oh SY, Choda Y, Yasui H, Takeuchi K, Hirashima Y, Hagihara S, Boku N. Nivolumab plus chemotherapy versus placebo plus chemotherapy in patients with HER2-negative, untreated, unresectable advanced or recurrent gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction cancer (ATTRACTION-4): a randomised, multicentre, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2022; **23**: 234-247 [PMID: 35030335 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(21)00692-6]

6 **Moehler MH**, Kato K, Arkenau H, Oh D, Tabernero J, Cruz-Correa M, Wang H, Xu H, Li J, Yang S, Xu R. Rationale 305: phase 3 study of tislelizumab plus chemotherapy vs placebo plus chemotherapy as first-line treatment (1L) of advanced gastric or gastroesophageal junction

adenocarcinoma (GC/GEJ). *J Clin Oncol* 2023; **41** Suppl 4: 286 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2023.41.4_suppl.286]

7 **Neuman T**, London M, Kania-Almog J, Litvin A, Zohar Y, Fridel L, Sandbank J, Barshak I, Vainer GW. A Harmonization Study for the Use of 22C3 PD-L1 Immunohistochemical Staining on Ventana's Platform. *J Thorac Oncol* 2016; **11**: 1863-1868 [PMID: 27664534 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtho.2016.08.146]

8 **Pollock NI**, Grandis JR. HER2 as a therapeutic target in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 526-533 [PMID: 25424855 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-1432]

9 **Oh N**, Kim H, Kim KM, Cheong JH, Lee J, Noh SH, Sohn TS, Choi YY, An JY. Microsatellite Instability and Effectiveness of Adjuvant Treatment in pT1N1 Gastric Cancer: A Multicohort Study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2021; **28**: 8908-8915 [PMID: 34401986 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-021-10084-0]

10 **Janjigian YY**, Werner D, Pauligk C, Steinmetz K, Kelsen DP, Jäger E, Altmannsberger HM, Robinson E, Tafe LJ, Tang LH, Shah MA, Al-Batran SE. Prognosis of metastatic gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer by HER2 status: a European and USA International collaborative analysis. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 2656-2662 [PMID: 22689179 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds104]

11 **Kataoka Y**, Okabe H, Yoshizawa A, Minamiguchi S, Yoshimura K, Haga H, Sakai Y. HER2 expression and its clinicopathological features in resectable gastric cancer. *Gastric Cancer* 2013; **16**: 84-93 [PMID: 22410801 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-012-0150-9]

12 **Zhang G**, Ren C, Li C, Wang Y, Chen B, Wen L, Jia M, Li K, Mok H, Cao L, Chen X, Lin J, Wei G, Li Y, Zhang Y, Balch CM, Liao N. Distinct clinical and somatic mutational features of breast tumors with high-, low-, or non-expressing human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 status. *BMC Med* 2022; **20**: 142 [PMID: 35484593 DOI: 10.1186/s12916-022-02346-9]

13 **Denkert C**, Seither F, Schneeweiss A, Link T, Blohmer JU, Just M, Wimberger P, Forberger A, Tesch H, Jackisch C, Schmatloch S, Reinisch M, Solomayer EF, Schmitt WD, Hanusch C, Fasching PA, Lübbe K, Solbach C, Huober J, Rhiem K, Marmé F, Reimer T, Schmidt M, Sinn BV, Janni W, Stickeler E, Michel L, Stötzer O, Hahnen E, Furlanetto J, Seiler S, Nekljudova V, Untch M, Loibl S. Clinical and molecular characteristics of HER2-low-positive breast cancer: pooled analysis of individual patient data from four prospective, neoadjuvant clinical trials. *Lancet Oncol* 2021; **22**: 1151-1161 [PMID: 34252375 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(21)00301-6]

14 **Moelans CB**, Milne AN, Morsink FH, Offerhaus GJ, van Diest PJ. Low frequency of HER2 amplification and overexpression in early onset gastric cancer. *Cell Oncol (Dordr)* 2011; **34**: 89-95 [PMID: 21394646 DOI: 10.1007/s13402-011-0021-0]

15 **Gao X**, Zhao L, Zhang N, Han W, Liu K, Yan J, Chen L, Pan Y, Li R, Li W, Zhang H, Li H, Wang S, Gao X, Niu P, Wang W, Ji G, Zhao Q, Lu Y, Li Z, Shang L, Liang H, Wu K, Deng J, Chen Y, Nie Y; MAGIS Study Group. Impact of HER2 on prognosis and benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy in stage II/III gastric cancer patients: a multicenter observational study. *Int J Surg* 2023; **109**: 1330-1341 [PMID: 37037586 DOI: 10.1097/JS9.0000000000000370]

16 **Chen DS**, Mellman I. Oncology meets immunology: the cancer-immunity cycle. *Immunity* 2013; **39**: 1-10 [PMID: 23890059 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.07.012]

17 **Kim JM**, Chen DS. Immune escape to PD-L1/PD-1 blockade: seven steps to success (or failure). *Ann Oncol* 2016; **27**: 1492-1504 [PMID: 27207108 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdw217]

18 **Vesely MD**, Kershaw MH, Schreiber RD, Smyth MJ. Natural innate and adaptive immunity to cancer. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2011; **29**: 235-271 [PMID: 21219185 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-031210-101324]

19 **Almekinders MM**, Bismeijer T, Kumar T, Yang F, Thijssen B, van der Linden R, van Rooijen C, Vonk S, Sun B, Parra Cuentas ER, Wistuba II, Krishnamurthy S, Visser LL, Seignette IM, Hofland I, Sanders J, Broeks A, Love JK, Menegaz B, Wessels L, Thompson AM, de Visser KE, Hooijberg E, Lips E, Futreal A, Wesseling J; Grand Challenge PRECISION Consortium. Comprehensive multiplexed immune profiling of the ductal carcinoma in situ immune microenvironment regarding subsequent ipsilateral invasive breast cancer risk. *Br J Cancer* 2022; **127**: 1201-1213 [PMID: 35768550 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-022-01888-2]

20 **Mutka M**, Joensuu K, Eray M, Heikkilä P. Quantities of CD3+, CD8+ and CD56+ lymphocytes decline in breast cancer recurrences while CD4+ remain similar. *Diagn Pathol* 2023; **18**: 3 [PMID: 36627701 DOI: 10.1186/s13000-022-01278-5]

21 **Wu S**, Zhang Q, Zhang F, Meng F, Liu S, Zhou R, Wu Q, Li X, Shen L, Huang J, Qin J, Ouyang S, Xia Z, Song H, Feng XH, Zou J, Xu P. HER2 recruits AKT1 to disrupt STING signalling and suppress antiviral defence and antitumour immunity. *Nat Cell Biol* 2019; **21**: 1027-1040 [PMID: 31332347 DOI: 10.1038/s41556-019-0352-z]

22 **Shu C**, Sankaran B, Chaton CT, Herr AB, Mishra A, Peng J, Li P. Structural insights into the functions of TBK1 in innate antimicrobial immunity. *Structure* 2013; **21**: 1137-1148 [PMID: 23746807 DOI: 10.1016/j.str.2013.04.025]

23 **Li S**, Wang L, Berman M, Kong YY, Dorf ME. Mapping a dynamic innate immunity protein interaction network regulating type I interferon production. *Immunity* 2011; **35**: 426-440 [PMID: 21903422 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.06.014]

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 644-652

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.644

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Impact of the economic crisis and drug shortage on Lebanese cancer patients' care

Dollen Eid, Jad Jabbour, Elissar Moujaes, Hampig Raphael Kourie, Maissa Safieddine, Joseph Kattan

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Griesemer I, United States; Khalil G, Lebanon

Received: January 6, 2024
Peer-review started: January 6, 2024
First decision: January 17, 2024
Revised: February 12, 2024
Accepted: March 27, 2024
Article in press: March 27, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Dollen Eid, Jad Jabbour, Department of Hematology and Oncology, Saint Joseph University, Faculty of Medicine, Mar Mikhaël, Beirut 0000, Lebanon

Elissar Moujaes, Department of Hematology and Oncology, Institut Gustave Roussy, Villejuif 94800, France

Hampig Raphael Kourie, Joseph Kattan, Department of Hematology and Oncology, Hôtel-Dieu de France University Hospital, Beirut 0000, Lebanon

Maissa Safieddine, Clinical Research Center, Saint Joseph University, Beirut 0000, Lebanon

Co-first authors: Dollen Eid and Jad Jabbour.

Corresponding author: Dollen Eid, MD, Doctor, Department of Hematology and Oncology, Saint Joseph University, Faculty of Medicine, Damascus Road, Mar Mikhaël, Beirut 0000, Lebanon. dolleneid@gmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

As a consequence of the economic crisis, the sociopolitical instability and the advent of the coronavirus disease-19 pandemic, nested challenges faced the Lebanese healthcare system. These have resulted in critical shortages of essential resources, including medications vital for oncologic patients.

AIM

To assess the ramifications of the ongoing economic crisis on oncology patient care focusing on our outpatient oncology department.

METHODS

A questionnaire was distributed during the month of February 2022 to oncology patients in Hôtel Dieu de France University Hospital in Beirut during their outpatient therapy. The primary objective was to assess the far-reaching impact of the economic crisis on patient care and the resulting psychological implications.

RESULTS

Among 182 interviewed patients, 31.87% experienced treatment interruption mainly due to acute drug shortages. Despite 87.91% of the patients benefiting from third-party coverage, 69.60% had to self-pay for their medications leading to 69.78% of patients perceiving that healthcare was more difficult to access after

2020. Psychologically, one-third of the patients exhibited symptoms of anxiety and/or depression, with 7 patients reporting suicidal ideations. Notably, 37.93% of patients who interrupted cancer treatment reported a history of comorbidities, and 89.66% who altered their treatment cited financial difficulties.

CONCLUSION

Lebanese cancer patients face complex challenges spanning economic, healthcare, and psychological realms. Income inequalities exacerbated by the economic crisis hindered healthcare access.

Key Words: Cancer care; Drug shortage; Economic crisis; Cancer psychology; Healthcare access

Core Tip: The Lebanese healthcare system, strained by economic crisis, sociopolitical unrest, and the coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic, faces critical shortages, impacting vital oncology medications. In February 2022, a questionnaire was administered to 182 oncologic patients at Hôtel Dieu de France University Hospital, Beirut during outpatient therapy. Results revealed that 31.87% experienced treatment interruptions due to acute drug scarcities. Despite 87.91% having third-party coverage, 69.60% self-funded medications, leading to 69.78% perceiving limited healthcare access post-2020. Psychologically, one-third exhibited anxiety/depression symptoms, and 7 patients reported suicidal thoughts. Most patients altered their treatment plan, citing financial strains.

Citation: Eid D, Jabbour J, Moujaes E, Kourie HR, Safieddine M, Kattan J. Impact of the economic crisis and drug shortage on Lebanese cancer patients' care. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 644-652
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/644.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.644

INTRODUCTION

Since the onset of the coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic in March 2020, the global landscape has grappled with a profound economic downturn[1]. Lebanon, amidst this worldwide crisis, has faced a multitude of deficiencies across various sectors. As per the World Bank, the economic upheaval in Lebanon stands among the foremost three significant global economic crises since the mid-19th century[2]. The Lebanese Pound (LBP) experienced unprecedented fluctuations, plummeting from 1500 LBP to 93000 LBP for 1 United States Dollar[3], notably exacerbated after the catastrophic Beirut blast on August 4, 2020. Despite 82% of the country's healthcare sector being reliant on private hospitals, the Lebanese government is indebted to them for a staggering 1.3 trillion dollars, a sum escalating perpetually [4].

The dearth of funds, resources, and foreign currency has placed the country in a precarious position in confronting the challenges posed by the COVID-19 pandemic. Furthermore, the government's inability to allocate a stimulus package has left both public and private hospitals ill-equipped with necessary resources[5]. Consequently, hospitals are grappling with financial constraints in procuring supplies and equipment and meeting the salaries of healthcare workers[4]. This strain on the socioeconomic health system has impacted patient care in various fields (infectious disease, cardiovascular disease, and others)[6,7].

Amidst this economic instability within the healthcare sector, the Lebanese oncology patient also faces formidable barriers in accessing adequate healthcare. Not only is treatment inherently expensive, but it has also become susceptible to smuggling across neighboring countries, hoarding by individuals and local warehouses, illicit trafficking of counterfeit drugs, and the collapse of third-party payer coverage[8].

In this backdrop, we assessed the ramifications of the ongoing economic crisis on oncology patient care at the outpatient oncology department at Hôtel Dieu de France University Hospital, a tertiary multidisciplinary university hospital located at the heart of Beirut, Lebanon. This hospital serves 15% of the Lebanese population and hosts almost 20% of cancer patients on a national scale.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

This study was based on a questionnaire that we established and distributed during the month of February 2022 to Lebanese oncology patients treated in the 1-d oncology ward at Hôtel Dieu de France University Hospital. The aim of the questionnaire was to assess their access to medical care as well as the physical and psychological impacts of the crisis and the lack of medication. Patients were questioned during their outpatient course of therapy, for around 10 min. They received an explanation of the study objectives, consented to fill out the questionnaire, and were assisted by one of the interns (who are also authors of this manuscript) during its completion on-site.

The study and the questionnaire were approved by the department's Institutional Review Board (No. CEHDF 1903).

Data collection

The following data were obtained for each patient: Age; sex; nationality; work status; marital status; educational level; and monthly income. The presence of other chronic illnesses in the patient and their family members and the presence or absence of healthcare coverage were also reported. Patients were questioned about social and financial difficulties that they have faced during the period of economic crisis and about difficulties in accessing healthcare or getting financial coverage for their healthcare expenses. The questionnaire also contained the Patient Health Questionnaire-4 (PHQ-4) items[9] that addressed the impact of the crisis on the patients' mental health (Supplementary Table 1) and one question about any suicidal thoughts the patient had during the prior 3 month. The Arabic and English versions of the questionnaire (both distributed to our patients who could choose either of the two versions) are represented in Supplementary material.

Statistical analyses

We estimated descriptive statistics to study the sociodemographic characteristics of patients. Patient characteristics were presented as mean and standard deviation in the cases of continuous data and absolute and relative frequencies in the cases of categorical data. Pearson's χ^2 and Student's t test were performed to determine statistical significance. Results were considered significant with a P value < 0.05.

The data collection was conducted through a Google Form. Statistical analyses were performed using R statistical software version 3.5.3 (packages: PrettyR, tableone).

RESULTS

Demographic and financial profiles among the population

A total of 182 patients were interviewed, consisting of 79 males (43.41%) and 103 females (56.59%) with an average age of 61.18 ± 13.32 years. Among them, 173 were Lebanese nationals (95.05%), while the remaining individuals hailed from diverse backgrounds such as France (n = 4), Iraq (n = 1), the Philippines (n = 1), Morocco (n = 1), Palestine (n = 1), and South Africa (n = 1).

Regarding residency, 122 participants (67.03%) lived within urban areas. Notably, the majority of the participants were non-working individuals during the survey period (63.38%) and were married (78.02%). Approximately half of the participants held university degrees, while 8.79% were characterized as being illiterate (Table 1).

Concerning monthly household income, 78 patients (42.86%) reported earnings below $300, while 56 patients (30.77%) fell within the $300-$1000 bracket. Forty-eight patients (26.37%) reported incomes exceeding $1000 per month. On average, this income supported 3.00 ± 1.54 individuals within the same household.

Around 34.07% of patients identified a family member with a severe chronic illness managed within the same income used for their own treatment (Table 2).

Medical condition and coverage of patients and their relatives during the economic crisis

Approximately 31.87% of patients recently halted or interrupted at least one oncological treatment, predominantly chemotherapy. Primary reasons cited were drug scarcity (70.69%) and unaffordable prices compounded by insurance coverage rejections (13.79%). These factors significantly influenced 44.51% of the population to change at least one medication (Table 3).

The vast majority (87.91%) of patients benefited from third-party payer coverage through either public social coverage or private insurance, the latter being the predominant means of insurance (51.25%). The remaining coverage included the National Social Security Fund or Caisse Nationale de Sécurité Sociale (32.5%), the Ministry of Public Health (8.13%), the Lebanese army (3.12%), the syndicate (2.5%), and the Caisse Française de l'Etranger (2.5%; Table 3).

Third-party payer limitations forced 69.60% of patients to self-finance their medication, with 11.20% relying on donations. Therefore, 79.12% of the population reported facing financial challenges due to healthcare expenses, and 23.08% resorted to self-medication instead of seeking professional care or emergency room assistance due to financial constraints. Also, 25 individuals (13.74%) had to forego treatments, surgeries, or procedures due to cost considerations, with 12 patients canceling chemotherapy sessions. Moreover, nearly half of the patients (51.65%) grappled with additional chronic illnesses, and 76% of these encountered barriers accessing specific treatments (Table 4).

The perceived access to healthcare post-2020 was considered more difficult by 69.78% of respondents. Yet, a quarter of patients (26.92%) noticed no changes before and after 2020, with only 3.30% perceiving healthcare as more accessible after 2020 (Figure 1).

Mental health of cancer patients during the economic crisis

We assessed the mental health status of patients during the crisis period through their responses to the 4-item PHQ-4 questionnaire. One-third of the patients expressed at least one symptom of anxiety and/or depression (Figure 2). Seven patients (4%) acknowledged suicidal ideations (Figure 3), of whom two patients had a PHQ-4 within the normal range.

Correlations among different characteristics

Analyzing these findings using the χ^2 test revealed significant relationships. Notably, a link between other personal

Table 1 Sociodemographic and clinical characteristics of patients, *n* (%)

Sociodemographic variables	Total, *n* = 182
Age, mean ± SD	61.18 ± 13.32
Sex	
Male	79 (43.41)
Female	103 (56.59)
Nationality	
Lebanese	173 (95.05)
Other	9 (4.95)
Place of residency	
City	122 (67.03)
Outside of the city	60 (32.97)
Work status	
Worker	63 (34.62)
Non-worker	119 (63.38)
Educational level	
Illiterate	16 (8.79)
Less than high school	11 (6.04)
High school	25 (13.74)
College	35 (19.23)
University	95 (52.20)
Status	
Married	142 (78.02)
Single	29 (15.93)
Divorced	1 (0.55)
Widowed	10 (5.50)

Table 2 Characteristics of the patients' households, *n* (%)

Characteristics	Total, *n* = 182
Total household income/month in USD	
< 300	78 (42.86)
Between 300 and 1000	56 (30.77)
> 1000	48 (26.37)
Number of people in household	3.00 ± 1.54
Household members-excluding the patient-suffering from serious chronic disease	
Yes	62 (34.07)
No	120 (65.93)

USD: United States Dollar.

Table 3 Reasons for treatment disruption, *n* (%)

Characteristics	Value, *n* = 182
Stopped or interrupted any drugs including chemotherapy	
Yes	58 (31.87)
Reason:	
Shortage	41 (70.69)
Price/coverage	8 (13.79)
COVID-19	1 (1.72)
Other	8 (13.79)
No	124 (68.13)
Changed any of their medications	
Yes	81 (44.51)
Reason:	
Shortage	74 (91.36)
Price	3 (3.70)
Coverage	4 (4.94)
No	101 (55.49)
Had a third-party payer	
Yes	160 (87.91)
Syndicate	4 (2.50)
Insurance	82 (51.25)
CNSS	52 (32.50)
CFE	4 (2.50)
Ministry of Public Health	13 (8.13)
Army	5 (3.12)
No	22 (12.09)
Source of medication payment	
Out-of-pocket	87 (69.60)
Donations	14 (11.20)
Family	9 (7.20)
Primary healthcare centers	14 (11.20)
Ministry of Public Health	1 (0.80)

CFE: Caisse Française de l'Etranger; CNSS: Caisse Nationale de Sécurité Sociale or National Social Security Fund; COVID-19: Coronavirus disease-19.

comorbidities and interrupting cancer treatment (P = 0.01) emerged, with 37.93% of patients who interrupted cancer treatment reporting a history of comorbidities.

Interruptions in cancer treatment correlated significantly with patient financial status (P = 0.017): 89.66% who altered their treatment cited financial issues compared to 15.79% who maintained their original medication.

Our data analysis also showed that individuals earning less than $300 were more prone to healthcare access-related financial difficulties compared to those earning more ($300 or above) with a statistically significant P value of 0.0022.

For those encountering financial distress, a notable association existed with patients avoiding consultations. Specifically, 95.24% of self-medicating individuals due to financial constraints reported difficulties stemming from healthcare expenses.

Additionally, among patients identified as severely prone to depression and/or anxiety *via* the PHQ-4 questionnaire, a significant link emerged with the presence of comorbidities. Nevertheless, no substantial correlation was observed between mental health status and financial situations or judgments regarding healthcare access.

Table 4 Financial coverage of the patient population, *n* (%)

Characteristics	Total, *n* = 182
Changing third-party payer due to coverage problems	
Yes	11 (6.04)
No	171 (93.96)
Reporting financial difficulties due to health care spending	
Yes	144 (79.12)
No	38 (20.88)
Self-medication instead of seeking medical treatment due to financial difficulties	
Yes	42 (23.08)
No	140 (76.92)
Cancelled a treatment, surgery, or any procedure because of its cost during the last year	
Yes	25 (13.74)[1]
No	157 (86.26)
Suffering from other chronic diseases necessitating chronic treatments	
Yes	94 (51.65)
No	88 (48.35)
Any problems accessing specific treatments for other chronic diseases	
Yes	76 (80.85)
No	18 (19.15)

[1]Twelve out of 25 canceled at least one course of chemotherapy.

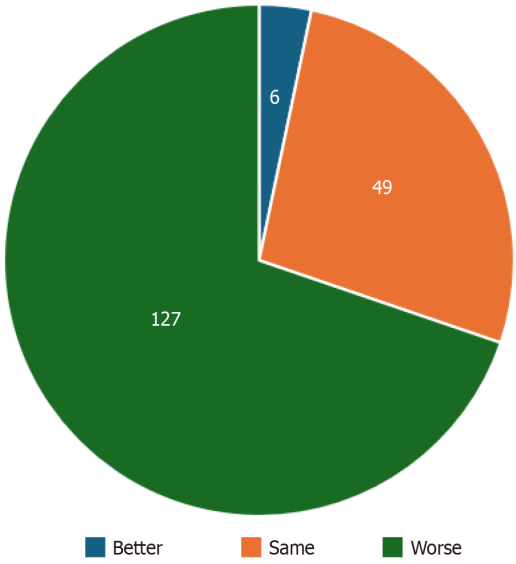


Figure 1 Patients' opinions on their access to healthcare before and after 2020.

DISCUSSION

The enduring economic crisis in Lebanon continues to exert profound strain, particularly on chronically ill patients. Within our cohort, these individuals represent a minority but are among the most susceptible to the ramifications of this economic upheaval. Despite this, it is evident that the COVID-19 pandemic has significantly exacerbated the challenges associated with accessing healthcare in Lebanon.

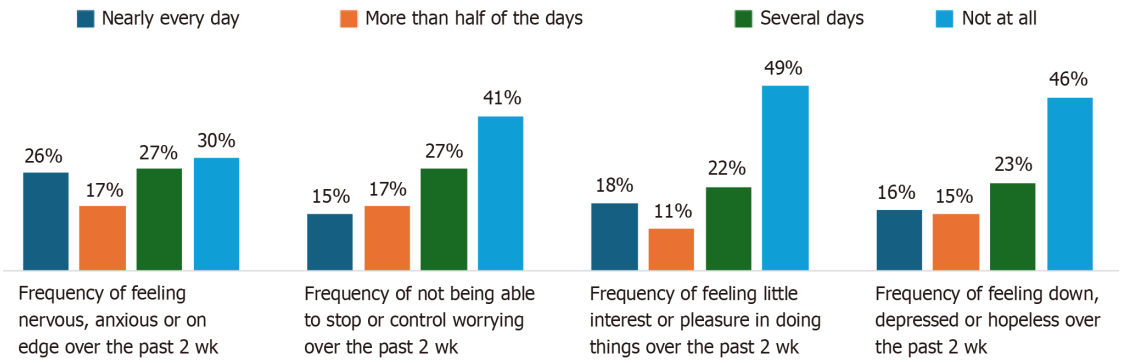


Figure 2 Responses to the patient health questionaire-4 assessment.

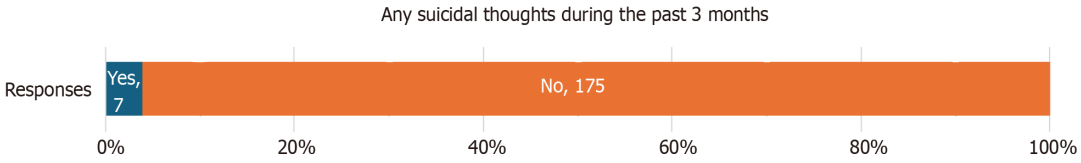


Figure 3 Responses of the population to an extra question about suicidal ideation.

Our investigation was tailored to measure the impact of this economic crisis specifically on cancer patients' healthcare access. Our objective was to analyze different material-related and mental health-related aspects of this impact and seek any discernable links between them.

While certain relationships yielded statistically significant findings, others proved inconsequential. For instance, we showed that individuals earning less than $300 were more susceptible to healthcare access-related financial difficulties compared to those earning more. However, when juxtaposing their healthcare system judgment (worse or not) with their household income, the study unveiled no statistically proven correlation, suggesting a nuanced relationship between income and access to treatment.

Moreover, Lebanon grapples with medication shortages and treatment unavailability, independent of financial means, thereby impeding access even for affluent individuals. Notably, the burden of cancer treatment poses a significant strain on the country's economic fabric[10].

A study published by Elias *et al*[11] in 2016 demonstrated the impact of government-financed cancer treatment between 2008 and 2013. The Ministry of Public Health financed cancer medication for all patients who did not have private insurance, which amounted to an average of 6475 United States Dollars over the 5 years. Interestingly, the cost exponentially increased during the study period due to excellent compliance of the patients to the treatment program. Our investigation revealed that since 2019 cancer drugs are no longer covered by the Ministry of Public Health due to the collapse of the government's financial structure. This forced patients to either pay out of pocket or interrupt their treatment.

Another study by Kattan *et al*[12] showcased how Lebanese oncologists struggle with drug shortages and coverage issues by resorting to switching brands, using on/off prescription policies and suboptimal drug doses, and deviating from recommended drug intake modes. However, these coping strategies adversely affect cancer patients.

Our findings revealed a prevalent trend of avoiding doctor consultations among the studied population, which was significantly associated with financial struggles. Surprisingly, no significant relationship emerged between skipping appointments due to financial issues and total household income. This could imply that affording medical expenses is difficult, even for people with a better income, due to paying out of pocket in the absence of third-party coverage.

Interestingly, perceptions of poor healthcare access did not align with the presence of a third-party payer, suggesting complexities within the policies of private insurance in Lebanon, particularly in covering cancer-related medications. Affording medication out of pocket did not directly impact perceptions of healthcare access.

Of note, the Caisse Nationale de Sécurité Sociale covered almost 90% of health expenses before the crisis, whereas the Ministry of Public Health used to cover all the expenses of patients who did not have any other coverage means. However, these policies were subject to perpetual changes since the beginning of inflation and with the daily change in currency rates. Some measures included tightening the area of coverage.

Moreover, our analyses underscored a noteworthy connection between personal comorbidities and discontinuation of cancer treatment. This could be attributed to patients diverting resources from cancer treatment to address other medical conditions. However, external factors, such as the country's ability to provide adequate treatment, could also influence treatment discontinuation.

Additionally, a worse mental health status was significantly correlated to the presence of comorbidities but was not correlated with the perception of worse healthcare access. This highlights the multifaceted nature of patients' mental health influenced by Lebanon's ongoing challenges. Not all 7 patients who expressed suicidal thoughts were within the severe risk range for anxiety and/or depression per the PHQ-4 test. This discrepancy raises queries about the sources of

suicidal thoughts beyond mental health concerns, emphasizing the need for comprehensive evaluations beyond the PHQ-4 test.

According to the World Health Organization, suicide is tightly linked to mental health conditions such as depression. However, many suicide attempts are reported in situations of crisis (financial difficulties, interpersonal problems, chronic illness) without previous mental health disorder. This is related to an impaired ability to handle life stress[13]. The suicidal rate among Lebanese people was 2.76 per 100000 in 2019[14] and according to the 2022 annual report of EMBRACE Lebanon one person in Lebanon attempts suicide every 6 h[15].

In our establishment, cancer patients who report suicidal thoughts are systematically referred to the psychiatry department for assessment. Unfortunately, psychiatry consultations and medications are not covered by any of the third-party payers in Lebanon. Therefore, most of these patients did not show up for their appointment.

Ultimately, our study underscored the intricate interplay between economic, healthcare, and mental health challenges in Lebanon. Addressing these multifaceted issues demands a comprehensive approach, integrating economic reforms, healthcare policy revisions, and tailored mental health interventions for better patient outcomes in this challenging landscape[16]. This could be achieved by promoting local potential and local manufacturers, standardizing medical consultation tariffs and private insurance packages, and implementing the national mental health strategy vision for 2023-2030 without delay[17]. Better supervision of healthcare structures and parties by the government is needed to identify corruption, and a wider cooperation with the private sector to shift medical aid to the most deprived patients would be beneficial.

The robustness of our study lies in the substantial number of patients interviewed, allowing for the collection of comprehensive data that potentially reflects the experiences of Lebanese cancer patients across the broader population. The diversity within our patient cohort offers insights into the varying economic circumstances prevalent within our country. Patients' financial situations might be different and easier to manage in secondary hospitals where costs are usually lower. However, we think that our results could still be extrapolated to the global population since cancer care in Lebanon is primarily concentrated in tertiary university hospitals and less often at secondary hospitals[18]. Moreover, cancer management would be less than optimal in secondary centers with the financial deterioration we are witnessing.

However, certain limitations are inherent in the study, primarily attributable to the ongoing instability and fluidity of circumstances during data collection. Factors such as fluctuating medication pricing, accessibility issues, and volatile exchange rates pose challenges in capturing a complete and static snapshot. A crucial aspect to acknowledge is that our study encompassed patients who could access hospitals and maintain their treatment regimen. Yet, it is imperative to note that a subset of patients discontinued hospital visits, which remains unaccounted for in our research. This group's absence from our study potentially alters the findings. Obtaining data from these patients would allow a more comprehensive view of the state of cancer patients in Lebanon.

Given this perspective and the continuously evolving economic landscape, the elaboration and implementation of a national cancer plan is imperative to enhance access to healthcare systems in Lebanon. These guidelines should address the multifaceted challenges faced by cancer patients, ensuring equitable access to essential treatments and support systems amidst these turbulent times. In the meantime, patients will continue to rely on individual donations, fundraising organized on social media, telethons that support cancer patients/cancer organizations, and remittances from the Lebanese diaspora[19].

CONCLUSION

Undoubtedly, the emergence of COVID-19 as a global pandemic has significantly impacted various sectors worldwide and notably the medical field. In Lebanon, the concurrent onset of the COVID-19 outbreak and the accompanying economic crisis has compounded the challenges faced by patients, particularly those battling cancer. These individuals, already navigating a challenging journey due to their medical condition, are now confronted with additional hurdles stemming from the pandemic and economic turmoil. Our study provided a glimpse into the collective experiences of cancer patients, highlighting how the economic crisis, exacerbated by the pandemic, has profoundly affected them both financially and psychologically.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Eid D and Jabbour J contributed equally to the data collection and analysis and writing of the manuscript; Moujaes E supervised the research study and contributed to the final version of the manuscript; Kourie HR, Eid D, and Jabbour J conceived the idea of the research study; Safieddine M analyzed the data and revised the statistics; Kattan J designed and supervised the research study.

Institutional review board statement: The Institutional Review Board of Hôtel Dieu de France University Hospital provided approval for this study (IRB No. CEHDF 1903).

Informed consent statement: Patients received an explanation of the study objectives, consented to fill out the questionnaire, and were assisted by one of the interns during its completion on-site.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Data sharing statement: The data that support the findings of this study were collected anonymously within a Google Sheet Form that can only be shared between the team members working on this study. They are available from the corresponding author (Dollen Eid, dolleneid@gmail.com) upon reasonable request.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement–checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement–checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: Lebanon

ORCID number: Dollen Eid 0009-0005-1839-6538; Elissar Moujaes 0000-0003-0244-8573; Joseph Kattan 0000-0003-4576-6248.

S-Editor: Li L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Borio C**. The Covid-19 economic crisis: dangerously unique. *Bus Econ* 2020; **55**: 181-190 [PMID: 32989332 DOI: 10.1057/s11369-020-00184-2]
2 **The World Bank**. Lebanon Sinking into One of the Most Severe Global Crises Episodes, amidst Deliberate Inaction. [cited 6 December 2023]. Available from: https://www.worldbank.org/en/news/press-release/2021/05/01/lebanon-sinking-into-one-of-the-most-severe-global-crises-episodes
3 **Baff S**. The Fluctuation of Lebanese Lira Against the US Dollar In the Parallel Market. Sep 8, 2021. [cited 6 December 2023]. Available from: https://blog.blominvestbank.com/41472/
4 **Devi S**. Economic crisis hits Lebanese health care. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 548 [PMID: 32087781 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30407-4]
5 **Mansour HA**, Bitar E, Fares Y, Makdessi AA, Maalouf A, Ghoul ME, Mansour MA, Chami A, Khalil M, Jalkh A, Cherfan D, Fares J, Khuri FR, Mansour AM; Beirut Port Ammonium Nitrate Explosion Consortium. The Beirut Port explosion: injury trends from a mass survey of emergency admissions. *Lancet* 2021; **398**: 21-22 [PMID: 34217389 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(21)01246-0]
6 **Isma'eel H**, El Jamal N, Al-Chaer E, Haj-Ali W, Hamadeh G. Reforming Healthcare Practice in View of the Economic Crisis in Lebanon: The Case of Cardiovascular Care. *Mediterr J Emerg Med Acute Care* 2020; **1**: 1-12 [DOI: 10.52544/2642-7184(1)4003]
7 **Khalil G**, Marty P, Hage K, Sfeir S, El Hage J, Bou Assi T, Rassam M, Pomares C, Mikhael E. Could the re-emerging practice of wild boar hunting linked to the recent economic crisis lead to new outbreaks of trichinellosis in Lebanon? *Parasite* 2022; **29**: 11 [PMID: 35225786 DOI: 10.1051/parasite/2022011]
8 **Fleifel M**, Abi Farraj K. The Lebanese Healthcare Crisis: An Infinite Calamity. *Cureus* 2022; **14**: e25367 [PMID: 35769680 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.25367]
9 **Kroenke K**, Spitzer RL, Williams JB, Löwe B. An ultra-brief screening scale for anxiety and depression: the PHQ-4. *Psychosomatics* 2009; **50**: 613-621 [PMID: 19996233 DOI: 10.1176/appi.psy.50.6.613]
10 **Prasad V**, De Jesús K, Mailankody S. The high price of anticancer drugs: origins, implications, barriers, solutions. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2017; **14**: 381-390 [PMID: 28290490 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2017.31]
11 **Elias F**, Khuri FR, Adib SM, Karam R, Harb H, Awar M, Zalloua P, Ammar W. Financial Burden of Cancer Drug Treatment in Lebanon. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2016; **17**: 3173-3177 [PMID: 27509947]
12 **Kattan C**, Kattan J. Accommodation with anticancer drug shortage: A Lebanese harmful solution. *Front Oncol* 2022; **12**: 1055113 [PMID: 36741703 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2022.1055113]
13 **World Health Organization**. Suicide. Aug 23, 2023. [Cited 1 February 2024]. Available from: https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/suicide
14 **Lew B**, Lester D, Kõlves K, Yip PSF, Chen YY, Chen WS, Hasan MT, Koenig HG, Wang ZZ, Fariduddin MN, Zeyrek-Rios EY, Chan CMH, Mustapha F, Fitriana M, Dolo H, Gönültaş BM, Dadfar M, Davoudi M, Abdel-Khalek AM, Chan LF, Siau CS, Ibrahim N. An analysis of age-standardized suicide rates in Muslim-majority countries in 2000-2019. *BMC Public Health* 2022; **22**: 882 [PMID: 35509027 DOI: 10.1186/s12889-022-13101-3]
15 **Embrace**. Embrace Lebanon. [Cited 2 February 2024]. Available from: https://www.embracelebanon.org/home
16 **El-Jardali F**, Masri R, Sleem Z. Rethinking Lebanon's Healthcare System Amid the Economic Crisis. LCPS. Jul 27, 2023. [Cited 1 February 2024]. Available from: https://www.lcps-lebanon.org/articles/details/4799/rethinking-lebanon's-healthcare-system-amid-the-economic-crisis
17 **Republic of Lebanon Ministry of Public Health**. Lebanon National Health Strategy-Vision 2030. [Cited 1 February 2024]. Available from: https://www.moph.gov.lb/en/Pages/0/67043/Lebanon-national-health-strategy-vision-2030
18 **Mohty R**, Tfayli A. General Oncology Care in Lebanon. In: Al-Shamsi HO, Abu-Gheida IH, Iqbal F, Al-Awadhi A, editors. Cancer in the Arab World. Singapore: Springer, 2022: 115-132 [DOI: 10.1007/978-981-16-7945-2_8]
19 **UNDP**. The increasing role and importance of remittances in Lebanon. Jun 9, 2023. [Cited 1 February 2024]. Available from: https://www.undp.org/arab-states/publications/increasing-role-and-importance-remittances-lebanon

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 653-663

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.653

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

In silico prospective analysis of the medicinal plants activity on the CagA oncoprotein from *Helicobacter pylori*

Rafaela Viana Vieira, Gabrielle Caroline Peiter, Fabrício Freire de Melo, Ana Carla Zarpelon-Schutz, Kádima Nayara Teixeira

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade A, Grade B

Novelty: Grade A, Grade B

Creativity or Innovation: Grade B, Grade B

Scientific Significance: Grade A, Grade B

P-Reviewer: Zhu Y, China

Received: December 15, 2023

Revised: April 1, 2024

Accepted: April 18, 2024

Published online: May 24, 2024

Rafaela Viana Vieira, Ana Carla Zarpelon-Schutz, Kádima Nayara Teixeira, Universidade Federal do Paraná, Campus Toledo, Toledo 85919-899, Brazil

Gabrielle Caroline Peiter, Universidade Tecnológica Federal do Paraná, Campus Toledo, Paraná 85902-490, Brazil

Fabrício Freire de Melo, Universidade Federal da Bahia, Instituto Multidisciplinar em Saúde-Campus Anísio Teixeira, Vitória da Conquista 45029-094, Brazil

Ana Carla Zarpelon-Schutz, Kádima Nayara Teixeira, Universidade Federal do Paraná-Setor Palotina, Programa de Pós-graduação em Biotecnologia, Palotina 85950-000, Brazil

Corresponding author: Kádima Nayara Teixeira, PhD, Professor, Universidade Federal do Paraná, Campus Toledo, Max Planck 3796, Toledo 85919-899, Brazil. kadimateixeira@ufpr.br

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Colonization with *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) has a strong correlation with gastric cancer, and the virulence factor CagA is implicated in carcinogenesis. Studies have been conducted using medicinal plants with the aim of eliminating the pathogen; however, the possibility of blocking *H. pylori*-induced cell differentiation to prevent the onset and/or progression of tumors has not been addressed. This type of study is expensive and time-consuming, requiring *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* tests, which can be solved using bioinformatics. Therefore, prospective computational analyses were conducted to assess the feasibility of interaction between phenolic compounds from medicinal plants and the CagA oncoprotein.

AIM

To perform a computational prospecting of the interactions between phenolic compounds from medicinal plants and the CagA oncoprotein of *H. pylori*.

METHODS

In this *in silico* study, the structures of the phenolic compounds (ligands) kaempferol, myricetin, quercetin, ponciretin (flavonoids), and chlorogenic acid (phenolic acid) were selected from the PubChem database. These phenolic compounds were chosen based on previous studies that suggested medicinal plants as non-drug treatments to eliminate *H. pylori* infection. The three-dime-

nsional structure model of the CagA oncoprotein of *H. pylori* (receptor) was obtained through molecular modeling using computational tools from the I-Tasser platform, employing the threading methodology. The primary sequence of CagA was sourced from GenBank (BAK52797.1). A screening was conducted to identify binding sites in the structure of the CagA oncoprotein that could potentially interact with the ligands, utilizing the GRaSP online platform. Both the ligands and receptor were prepared for molecular docking using AutoDock Tools 4 (ADT) software, and the simulations were carried out using a combination of ADT and AutoDock Vina v.1.2.0 software. Two sets of simulations were performed: One involving the central region of CagA with phenolic compounds, and another involving the carboxy-terminus region of CagA with phenolic compounds. The receptor-ligand complexes were then analyzed using PyMol and BIOVIA Discovery Studio software.

RESULTS

The structure model obtained for the CagA oncoprotein exhibited high quality (C-score = 0.09) and was validated using parameters from the MolProbity platform. The GRaSP online platform identified 24 residues (phenylalanine and leucine) as potential binding sites on the CagA oncoprotein. Molecular docking simulations were conducted with the three-dimensional model of the CagA oncoprotein. No complexes were observed in the simulations between the carboxy-terminus region of CagA and the phenolic compounds; however, all phenolic compounds interacted with the central region of the oncoprotein. Phenolic compounds and CagA exhibited significant affinity energy (-7.9 to -9.1 kcal/mol): CagA/kaempferol formed 28 chemical bonds, CagA/myricetin formed 18 chemical bonds, CagA/quercetin formed 16 chemical bonds, CagA/ponciretin formed 13 chemical bonds, and CagA/chlorogenic acid formed 17 chemical bonds. Although none of the phenolic compounds directly bound to the amino acid residues of the K-Xn-R-X-R membrane binding motif, all of them bound to residues, mostly positively or negatively charged, located near this region.

CONCLUSION

In silico, the tested phenolic compounds formed stable complexes with CagA. Therefore, they could be tested *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* to validate the findings, and to assess interference in CagA/cellular target interactions and in the oncogenic differentiation of gastric cells.

Key Words: CagA oncoprotein; Phenolic compounds; *Helicobacter pylori*; *In silico* analyses; Medicinal plants; Prospective analysis

Core Tip: Commonly, studies on the effects of medicinal plants on *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection assess the antimicrobial activity of these plants. However, in this study, the authors conducted a prospective *in silico* analysis of the activity of certain phenolic compounds from plants used to treat *H. pylori* infection on stomach cells affected by CagA, aiming to prevent or block the oncogenic differentiation of these cells.

Citation: Vieira RV, Peiter GC, de Melo FF, Zarpelon-Schutz AC, Teixeira KN. *In silico* prospective analysis of the medicinal plants activity on the CagA oncoprotein from *Helicobacter pylori*. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 653-663
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/653.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.653

INTRODUCTION

Colonization of gastric epithelial cells by *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) has a strong positive correlation with gastric diseases such as peptic ulcers and stomach cancer, owing to the virulence factors and evasion capabilities of the bacteria [1]. The standard treatment for eradicating *H. pylori* is complex and relies on antibiotics[2,3], proton pump inhibitors[4], bismuth salts[5], and H2 blockers[6], typically used in combination for an extended duration[7].

Multiple factors contribute to hindering the eradication of *H. pylori*, among which drug inefficiency and the bacteria's antibiotic resistance are prominent[7]. In 2017, the World Health Organization classified *H. pylori* as resistant to clarithromycin, metronidazole, and levofloxacin, emphasizing the urgent need for research into new antibiotics targeting the bacteria[8].

In this context, medicinal plants and their secondary metabolites have emerged as an alternative for managing *H. pylori* infection. The literature reports several plant species with antimicrobial activity against *H. pylori*, which act by inhibiting, reducing, and delaying gastric colonization. Plants such as Pistacia lentiscus, Brassica oleracea, Curcuma longa, Coptis chinensis, and Glycyrrhiza glabra were tested in rodents (mice and rats); Vaccinium macrocarpon, Glycyrrhiza glabra, and Nigella sativa were tested in humans, with observed results indicating biological activity against the bacteria and the progression of infection[9]. Dinat *et al*[10] discuss the use of medicinal plants in treating *H. pylori* infection and identified

antimicrobial activity in several of them, such as Hibiscus sabdariffa and Piper longum.

Commonly, the use of medicinal plants to treat *H. pylori* infection aims at antimicrobial action to eliminate the pathogen and consequently prevent the development of associated pathologies such as gastritis, ulcers, and especially gastric cancer. Although studies have demonstrated antimicrobial activity in many plants, most are classified as having weak or weak to moderate activity based on the minimum inhibitory concentration test. Many secondary metabolites of medicinal plants with anti- *H. pylori* activity have been reported, including phenolic compounds, coumarins, quinones, terpenoids, and alkaloids[11]. Several studies attribute the biological activity of medicinal plants to phenolic compounds, which include anti-cancer[12-16], anti-proliferative, anti-angiogenic, and antimicrobial activities[17,18].

Although studies have primarily focused on antimicrobial activity, medicinal plants and their metabolites may also interfere with pathogenic cellular processes induced by *H. pylori*. In cases of infection with CagA-positive *H. pylori* strains, where the colonization process is advanced, it would be crucial not only to eliminate the pathogen but also to block the cell differentiation induced by CagA to prevent the development of cancer. Therefore, addressing the treatment of *H. pylori* infection through targeting the CagA would be of interest.

The CagA is an oncoprotein, a virulence factor of *H. pylori* responsible for inducing genetic mutations and alterations in gastric cells[19]. This oncoprotein is encoded by the pathogenicity island (cag-PAI) and is transported into cells *via* a type 4 secretion system (T4SS)[20]. Inside cells, CagA attaches to the plasma membrane in two distinct ways: Through the interaction of basic amino acids, including those in the K-Xn-R-X-R binding motif located in the central region of CagA, or through the carboxy-terminus region. Subsequently, CagA undergoes tyrosine phosphorylation on the EPIYA (Glu-Pro-Ile-Tyr-Ala) motif, which is present in multiple copies in the carboxy-terminus polymorphic region, by Src kinase members such as c-Src, Yes, Fyn, and Abl kinase[21]. Phosphorylated CagA interferes with cell signaling pathways, including the MAP kinase pathway, leading to mitogenic imbalance, induction of a pro-inflammatory state, cytoskeleton damage, and disruption of cell-cell junctions[20,22,23].

The carboxy-terminus end of the CagA oncoprotein also contains the CagA-multimerization (CM) motif, which facilitates its dimerization or multimerization. CM motif consists of 16 amino acid residues and is located immediately distal to the last EPIYA segment. Apart from facilitating multimerization, the CM motif enables CagA to interact with regulatory molecules that affect proper cell signaling[21]. The cumulative effect of dysregulated cell signaling, disordered cell growth, endothelial injury, and loss of mucosal integrity caused by the CagA oncoprotein predisposes individuals to precancerous lesions in the stomach, explaining the higher incidence of cancer in individuals colonized with CagA-positive *H. pylori*[22].

Therefore, approaches could be explored to interfere with the CagA-cellular targets interaction, aiming to reduce or inhibit the activity of this protein and, consequently, its oncogenic potential. Phenolic compounds from plants are capable of crossing the plasma membrane of human cells and interacting with proteins and enzymes of cellular signaling cascades, altering the course of signal transduction[24]. Thus, this study aimed a prospective computational analysis of the action of certain phenolic compounds from medicinal plants, which are reported in the treatment of *H. pylori* infection, on the CagA oncoprotein, and consequently, on the cellular signaling pathways that are important for CagA-dependent gastric carcinogenesis. This prospecting may guide *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* studies to reduce financial and labor burdens.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Molecular modeling

Molecular modeling of the CagA oncoprotein was carried out using the primary sequence BAK52797.1 of the CagA oncoprotein from *H. pylori*, which contains 1194 residues including the EPIYA-A, B, C, and CM motifs, in FASTA format, selected from GenBank (ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank). The FASTA sequence was utilized to search for X-ray diffraction solved three-dimensional structures deposited in online public databases. However, the structures found in the databases did not include either the amino-terminus or the carboxy-terminus ends of the CagA oncoprotein. Global and local alignment analyses of CagA were performed using the BioEdit software (Informer Technologies, Inc.) and the Basic Local Alignment Search Tool algorithm (National Institutes of Health/United States), respectively. Since no satisfactory homologous templates were found, the CagA oncoprotein was modeled using the structure prediction methodology-Threading, employing tools from the I-Tasser platform[25], and the model was validated using the MolProbity platform [26].

Prediction of binding sites in the CagA oncoprotein

The modeled CagA oncoprotein was analyzed using the GRaSP online platform[27] to predict residues that could serve as potential binding sites. This data will be compared with the results obtained from molecular docking.

Preparation of ligands and receptor

Chemical compounds selected as ligands were phenolic compounds, and their two-dimensional structures were obtained from the PubChem Database (pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov)-kaempferol (PubChem: 6325460), myricetin (PubChem: 5281672), quercetin (PubChem: 5280343), ponciretin (PubChem: 25201019), and chlorogenic acid (PubChem: 1794427). The two-dimensional structures were converted to three-dimensional form using PyMol software (Schrödinger, Inc.). The protonation state of each phenolic compound at physiological pH 7.4 was predicted using MarvinSketch software (ChemAxon) before proceeding with docking simulations. All phenolic compounds were selected from studies involving medicinal plants used for the treatment of *H. pylori* infection[28,29]. AutoDock Tools 4 (ADT) software[30] was used to

detect and calculate the points and angles of torsion, respectively. The CagA oncoprotein was prepared using the same software to add missing hydrogen atoms.

Molecular docking

Molecular docking was performed using the flexible ligand-rigid receptor methodology[31]. The simulations were conducted by associating ADT with AutoDock Vina v.1.2.0 software[32], enabling the establishment of an algorithm that searches for potential bond combinations, including rotational, translational, and conformational degrees of freedom. This algorithm also establishes scoring criteria to select the best ligand-receptor interactions. Points are assigned according to the molecular force field and the free energy of the bond, with interactions considered stable if the affinity energy is lower than -6.0 kcal/mol[33]. Two sets of molecular docking simulations were carried out: (1) Central region of CagA + phenolic compound; and (2) carboxy-terminus region of CagA + phenolic compound. The membrane binding motif (K-Xn-R-X-R) is located in the central region, while the EPIYA and CM motifs are in the carboxy-terminus region of the CagA oncoprotein. Gridbox dimensions and coordinates were determined separately to allocate the central region and the carboxy-terminus end of the CagA (receptor). Evaluation of the receptor/ligand complexes was performed using PyMol and BIOVIA Discovery Studio (Dassault Systemes) software. Physicochemical analysis of the residues involved in the chemical bonds was carried out using the ProtParam tool[34]. The data was analyzed using descriptive statistics (mean and relative values).

RESULTS

Predicted three-dimensional model of *H. pylori* CagA oncoprotein

Five structural models were constructed based on 10 three-dimensional structures, and the most satisfactory model, with a C-score value of 0.09, was selected (Figure 1A). The C-score assesses the quality of models predicted by I-Tasser; it typically ranges from -5 to 2, with higher values indicating models with higher reliability. MolProbity indicated that approximately 98% of the amino acid residues in the model were located within the allowed regions of the Ramachandran plot.

In silico predicted binding sites of the CagA oncoprotein

A total of 24 amino acid residues were predicted as possible binding sites for ligands. The algorithm indicated 19 phenylalanine (F) and 5 leucine (L) residues with a probability above 50% of interacting with other molecules. This value represents the algorithm's cut-off point. Among the 24 residues, only one coincided with the molecular docking results (F426) (Table 1). The residues are distributed across the surface of CagA, and no clusters were observed (Figure 1B).

CagA/phenolic compound complexes

The phenolic compounds analyzed formed complexes with the CagA oncoprotein *in silico* (Figure 2); all five compounds bound to the central region of the protein close to the spatial region of the membrane-binding motif (residues 621 to 626) (Figure 3). No *in silico* interactions were observed between the phenolic compounds and the carboxy-terminal region of CagA where the EPIYA motifs are located. The affinity energies were considered satisfactory and ranged from -7.9 kcal/mol (CagA/chlorogenic acid) to -9.1 kcal/mol (CagA/kaempferol). The other complexes showed similar affinity energy values-CagA/quercetin = -8.1 kcal/mol, CagA/myricetin = -8.2 kcal/mol, CagA/ponciretin = -8.4 kcal/mol. In all the complexes, covalent bonds and reversible bonds (hydrogen bond and van der Waals) were observed. The CagA/kaempferol complex showed 28 bonds (2.1Å - 2.3Å) involving 23 amino acid residues; this was the complex with the highest number of chemical bonds. The CagA/myricetin complex showed 18 bonds (2.0Å - 2.9Å) involving 15 residues; CagA/quercetin complex-16 bonds (2.2Å) involving 13 residues; CagA/ponciretin complex-13 bonds (2.5Å - 3.4Å) involving 11 residues; CagA/chlorogenic acid complex-17 bonds (1.9Å - 3.3Å) involving 15 residues. All the chemical bonds present in each complex are shown in Figure 4 in a two-dimensional diagram, and the residues are listed in Table 1. Fifty-three amino acid residues participated in chemical bonds with at least one of the phenolic compounds analyzed *in silico*. Of these, eight made bonds with two compounds, and eight made bonds with three compounds, most of which were positively (L) or negatively (D/E) charged residues.

DISCUSSION

H. pylori strains harboring the gene CagA-CagA-positive strains-significantly increase the risk of developing gastric cancer when compared to CagA-negative strains[35]. The cellular modifications triggered by the CagA oncoprotein, after being injected into stomach epithelial cells, involve the EPIYA motifs becoming targets for phosphorylation and recruitment to enzymes and adaptor proteins. These events disrupt the standard cellular metabolism, triggering pre-lesion processes[21].

The results of this *in silico* study suggest that, after being injected into the cytoplasm of gastric epithelial cells *via* T4SS, the CagA oncoprotein can interact with xenobiotics that cross the plasma membrane of these cells, such as phenolic compounds from medicinal plants. The computational search for binding sites in CagA indicated several phenylalanine and leucine residues with this potential. Since these residues did not form clusters, it is possible that they represent the starting point for ligand binding, and the site itself is composed of more residues that become closer together after ligand

Table 1 Amino acid residues bound to phenolic compounds by molecular docking and binding sites predicted by GRaSP

Molecular docking						Binding sites by GRaSP
Phenolic compounds						
	Kaempferol	Myricetin	Quercetin	Ponciretin	Chlorogenic acid	Residue[1]/position
Residue[1]/position	A601	A439	D432	D432	D403	F23
	D403	D432	N400	E383	E396	F31
	E406	E383	E383	E397	F451	F41
	E422	E429	E396	E429	G607	F60
	F407	F378	E397	K382	I463	F88
	F426[2]	K382	E429	K401	K425	F122
	G496	K401	K382	L393	K604	F161
	H500	L393	K401	N400	L454	F188
	K425	N375	L393	N428	L462	F269
	K499	N428	N428	Q385	N360	F291
	K604	Q385	Q385	Y381	R399	F426[2]
	L418	Q390	S394		S453	F537
	L471	S377	Y440		T464	F543
	L494	Y381			V402	F582
	M504	Y440			Y609	F596
	N417					F637
	N597					F702
	Q410					F805
	Q495					F818
	S419					L226
	S497					L260
	V600					L688
	Y473					L835
						L964

[1]The residues are identified by the one-letter code.
[2]Coincident amino acid residue in molecular docking and GRaSP.

binding due to a conformational change; in other words, the ligand would actually be an allosteric modulator[36].

Due to the chemical nature of the side chains of these residues, they are expected to form hydrophobic bonds with compounds of a similar chemical nature. This increases the likelihood of secondary metabolites that are more hydrophobic than those evaluated interacting with the CagA oncoprotein, such as terpenes and terpenoids[37].

The phenolic compounds evaluated in this *in silico* study (ponciretin, kaempferol, quercetin, myricetin, and chlorogenic acid) bound to the central region of the CagA oncoprotein, near the membrane phospholipid-binding motif-K-Xn-R-X-R motif. Due to the proximity of the bonds formed by the phenolic compounds to this motif and the high interaction affinity considered, these compounds could induce conformational changes in the protein, thus destabilizing its previous interactions with cellular targets. Even if the carboxy-terminus region, where the EPIYA and CM motifs are found, does not bind to the analyzed phenolic compounds, the interaction between CagA and the plasma membrane is still necessary for the phosphorylation process. Therefore, interference through the membrane-binding domain could be effective in blocking this process.

Given the consideration of phenolic compounds as an alternative for interfering with CagA oncoprotein activity within epithelial cells, it is important to note that these compounds are absorbed in the human intestine through the action of bile salts, passive diffusion, or transporters[38]. After absorption, phenolic compounds can undergo conjugation with glucuronic acid in enterocytes or hepatocytes, or they can circulate in the bloodstream bound to albumin[39]. Conjugated phenolic compounds can cross cell membranes through carrier proteins and can reach different tissues[38], including the stomach.

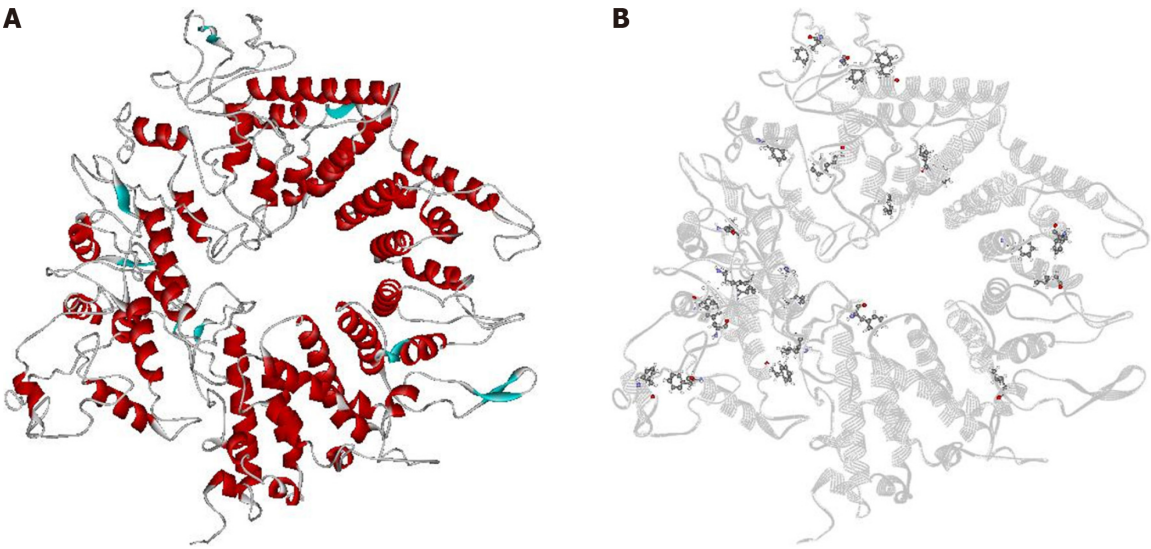


Figure 1 Three-dimensional structure model of *Helicobacter pylori*'s CagA and predicted binding sites *in silico*. A: CagA structure model. Blue: β-sheets; red: α-helices; gray: loops; B: CagA structure model in gray flat ribbon with predicted binding sites (residues) highlighted in ball and stick format.

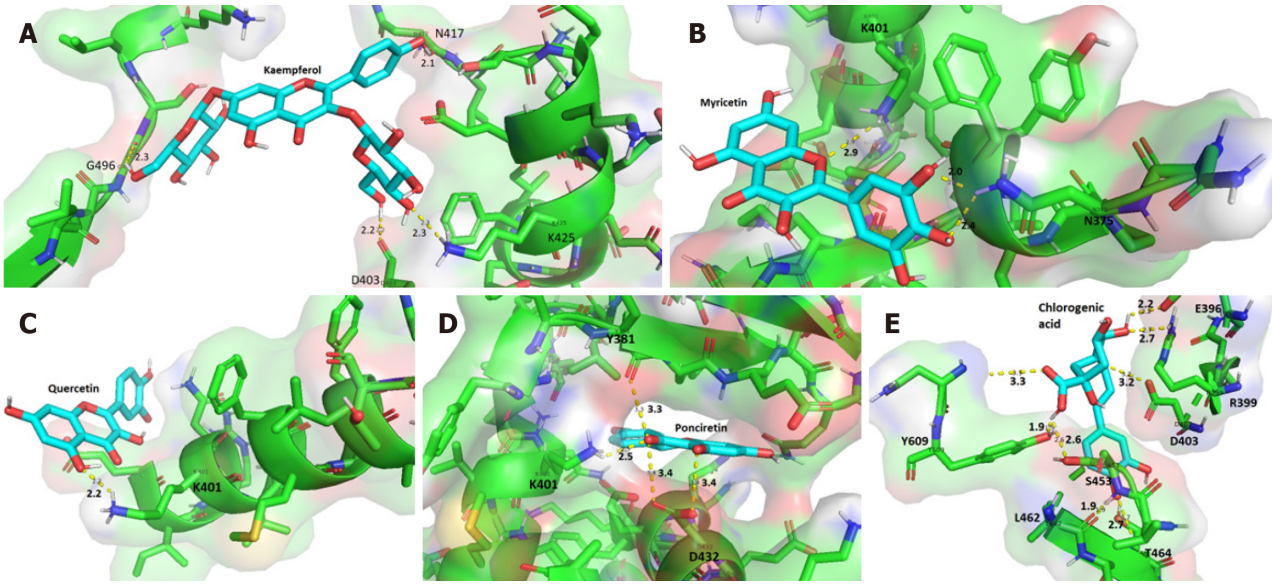


Figure 2 Interaction of phenolic compounds with amino acid residues in the central region of the CagA oncoprotein. A: Cag/kaempferol complex; B: Cag/myricetin complex; C: CagA/quercetin complex; D: CagA/poncíretin complex; E: CagA/chlorogenic acid complex. Residues are represented by their one-letter code and position in the primary sequence. Chemical bonds are depicted by dashed lines, and the bond length is measured in Angstroms (Å). Only a subset of the chemical bonds are showed in the figure.

Therefore, based on the *in silico* results and the capacity of phenolic compounds to penetrate cells, these polyphenols have potential for subsequent *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies for the treatment of gastric *H. pylori* infections. They not only exhibit antimicrobial activity, as described for plants containing these compounds, but also have the ability to bind to and destabilize the interaction between CagA and epithelial cells. This interference could potentially prevent the initiation of changes leading to malignant transformation of gastric cells, such as the activation of PAR1/MARK kinases causing loss of cell polarization, and the inactivation of p53 resulting in uncontrolled and disordered cell proliferation[20,29].

A study by Castillo-Juárez *et al*[40] demonstrated the anti-*H. pylori* activity of some plants commonly used in traditional Mexican medicine, including Moussonia deppeana. This plant, popularly known as tlanchichinol, contains one of the five phenolic compounds analyzed in this study-chlorogenic acid. It was observed that this phenolic acid exhibited better results than the antibiotic metronidazole in inhibiting bacterial growth *in vitro*[29,40]. Furthermore, the *in silico* binding of chlorogenic acid with the central region of CagA suggests its potential for *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* testing to assess its effectiveness in interfering with the interaction between CagA and the plasma membrane, thereby potentially affecting the cell signaling pathway related to gastric cell differentiation.

Szewczyk *et al*[41], in a separate study, investigated the antimicrobial properties of plants from the Balsaminaceae family, including the species Impatiens glandulifera, (*Himalayan balsam*), through an *in vitro* study. The study revealed

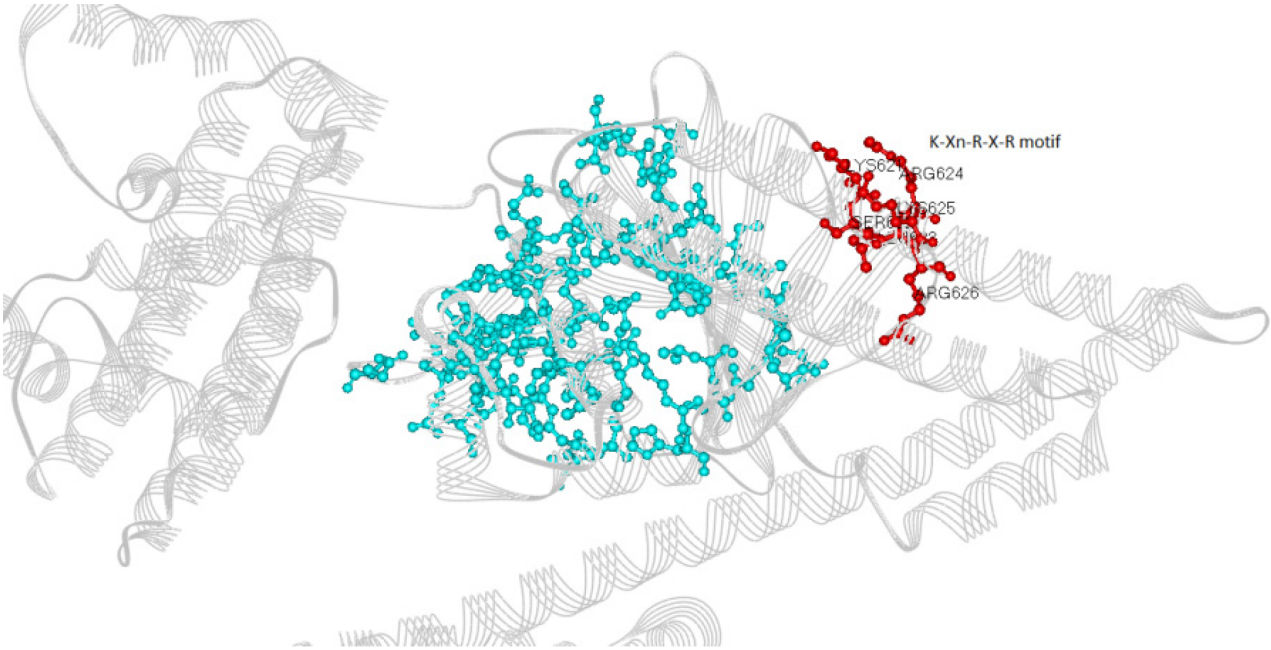


Figure 3 Localization of the K-Xn-R-X-R membrane-binding motif (621-626) and all the amino acid residues that have bound to phenolic compounds *in silico*. Red: Residues of the K-Xn-R-X-R motif. Blue: Residues that have bound to phenolic compounds.

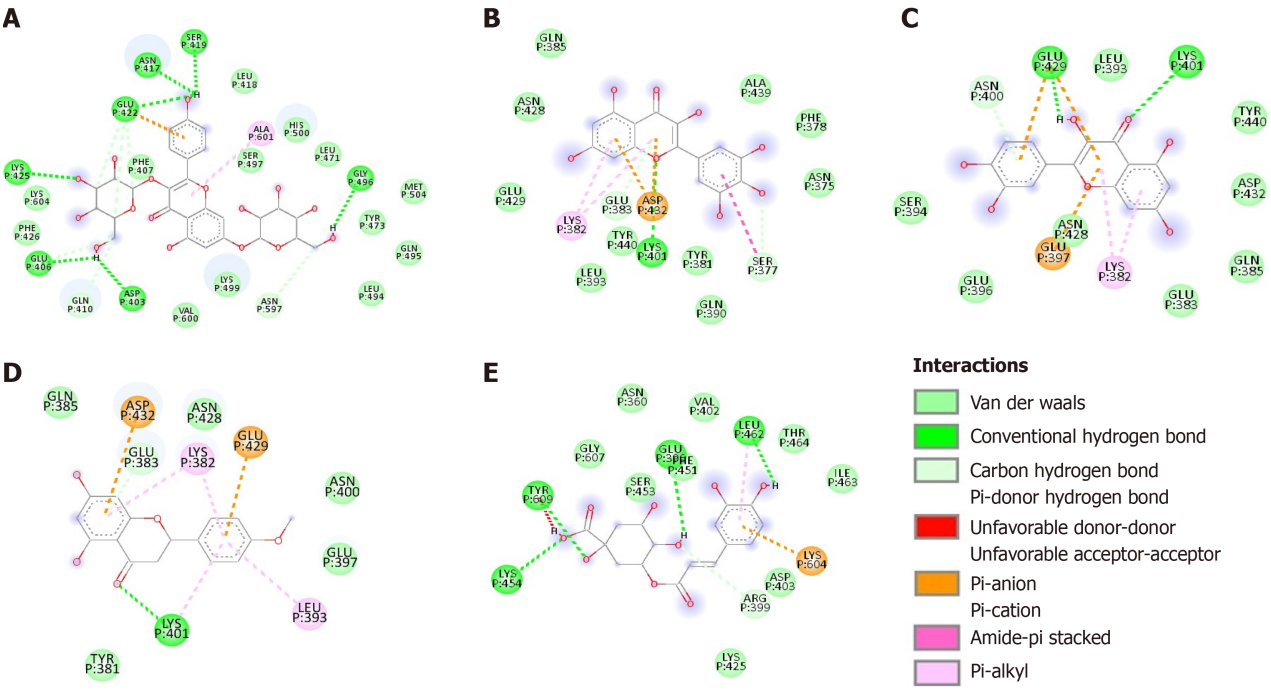


Figure 4 Two-dimensional diagram of the chemical bonds between phenolic compounds and the CagA oncoprotein. A: Cag/kaempferol complex; B: Cag/myricetin complex; C: CagA/quercetin complex; D: CagA/ponciretin complex; E: CagA/chlorogenic acid complex. Residues are represented by three-letter codes and their positions in the primary sequence. Chemical bonds are depicted with dashed lines, except for van der Waals interactions. The internal legend indicates the type of chemical bond.

that *I. glandulifera* exhibits high concentrations of phenolic acids, particularly in its aerial parts, and significant antioxidant and antimicrobial activity against Staphylococcus aureus, *S. epidermidis*, Micrococcus luteus, Bacillus subtilis, *B. cereus*, Streptococcus pneumoniae, and *S. pyogenes*. However, direct studies confirming the antimicrobial activity of *I. glandulifera* against *H. pylori* are lacking.

Nevertheless, Vieira *et al*[28] isolated some flavonoids from this plant through chromatography-kaempferol, quercetin, and myricetin-which, according to our findings, demonstrate *in silico* potential as interferents of the CagA oncoprotein. Among these, due to its binding site, kaempferol appears to be the most effective in destabilizing the interaction between CagA and the epithelial cell membrane. Therefore, *I. glandulifera* warrants further exploration to evaluate its efficacy in

halting precancerous changes induced by CagA-positive *H. pylori* strains.

The plant Buddleja indica, known for its richness in kaempferol, caffeic acid (a metabolite of chlorogenic acid), and quercetin, is reported to possess anti-diabetic, hepatoprotective, antioxidant, and antimicrobial properties[42,43]. Youssef *et al*[42] highlighted the bacteriostatic activity of *B. indica* against *H. pylori* in an *in vitro* study. Given that this plant contains two of the compounds discussed in this study, it could be explored in further research on anti-carcinogenic therapy.

Other plants that could be investigated for the presence of the phenolic compounds discussed in this study include Polygonum tinctorium, or indigo (kaempferol, quercetin, and caffeic acid), known for their bactericidal and bacteriostatic activity[44,45]; Rubus ulmifolius, or blackberry (kaempferol, quercetin, and caffeic acid), with bactericidal action[46,47]; Poncirus trifoliata (ponciretin), exhibiting bacteriostatic action[48-50]; Oliveira decumbens (kaempferol), and Hibiscus rosa-sinensis (myricetin, quercetin, kaempferol), with anti-urease and bacteriostatic activity[51-53]. In our study, among the phenolic compounds tested, kaempferol and chlorogenic acid appear to be the most promising candidates for interfering with the interaction between CagA and the phospholipids of the plasma membrane, as they exhibit lower affinity energies, indicating greater stability of the complexes.

The studies correlating flavonoids/phenolic acids and *H. pylori* primarily focus on the action of these compounds as bactericides, bacteriostats, and anti-urease agents, rather than addressing virulence factors that directly damage host cells, such as CagA. Most research aims to identify alternatives to antibiotics due to the process of bacterial resistance. Indeed, the eradication of *H. pylori* infection is crucial due to its pathogenic factors, as well as the physiological and biochemical mechanisms that can lead to the malignancy of gastric cells[54].

The utilization of bioinformatics in scientific research is increasingly contributing to the study of molecular interactions [55]. Among these studies, González *et al*[56] investigated several flavonoids, including kaempferol, quercetin, and myricetin, for their ability to bind to and inactivate the homeostatic stress regulatory protein, yielding promising results. As this protein is crucial for fundamental *H. pylori* activities such as energy metabolism and genetic material replication, its inactivation results in either bacterial death or reduced multiplication. This study aligns with the same rationale as the present work, wherein the binding of compounds to bacterial components leads to detrimental implications for pathogenic progression.

Inhibiting the action of CagA has the potential to halt the progression of gastric *H. pylori* lesions to malignancy, as this protein disrupts multiple pathways regulating cellular homeostasis. Upon entry into cells through T4SS, phosphorylation of EPIYA motifs occurs, leading to the recruitment of various molecules to the plasma membrane of gastric cells, thereby modulating and altering multiple cell signaling pathways[57]. EPIYA-C motifs are phosphorylated by Src family kinases; *H. pylori* strains containing higher numbers of EPIYA-C motifs are associated with an increased likelihood of gastric cancer emergence. CagA interacts with the tyrosine phosphatase S *H. pylori*-2 and potentiates the action of the Erk-MAP kinase, with or without utilizing the Ras protein, while also inactivating the focal adhesion kinase FAK. This pathway results in the hummingbird phenotype, characterized by a rearrangement of the cytoskeleton in gastric cells, leading to enhanced cell motility and elongation[58,59], and is implicated in the malignancy process[60]. Therefore, since the transition from a precancerous state to cancer is characterized by accelerated and disordered tissue growth, inhibiting the CagA oncoprotein could prevent or slow down this process.

Since the molecular events leading to the hummingbird phenotype are dependent on the action of the Cag oncoprotein, blocking this protein could prevent the cellular oncogenic process. One way to block it would be to prevent CagA from interacting with the plasma membrane of gastric cells, which could be achieved by using a phenolic compound, as suggested by the data from this *in silico* study (Figure 5).

Indeed, a study on the post-translational processing of the CagA oncoprotein revealed that this process may be involved in the pathogenesis of *H. pylori* infection, as CagA fragmentation alters its functionality, thereby reducing the induction of the hummingbird phenotype[61]. This suggests that interventions targeting CagA may reduce carcinogenic predisposition, similar to the observations made in this *in silico* study. It is a fact that the tertiary conformation of a protein is determined by the interaction between its amino acid residues, and the binding, whether transient or otherwise, of external molecules to this assembly can lead to a state of inactivity[62]. Thus, by binding to the central region of CagA, the phenolic compounds in this study, especially kaempferol and chlorogenic acid, may induce conformational and functional changes in this virulence factor.

Finally, the present study has some limitations regarding its application in clinical treatments, as the functioning of the human organism is complex, involving a myriad of biochemical and physiological cascades that interact to achieve homeostasis. Therefore, since computational tools simulate only some physiological parameters, the environment in which the interaction between CagA and phenolic compounds was tested does not fully reflect the physiological environment, and all potential metabolic influences were not considered. Hence, further *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies should be conducted to complement the data obtained.

CONCLUSION

The *in silico* data suggest that phenolic compounds (flavonoids and phenolic acids) present in medicinal plants used to treat *H. pylori* infection bind to the CagA oncoprotein in its central region, close to the membrane anchoring site. Furthermore, none of the amino acid residues of CagA predicted as binding sites are involved in the interaction with the phenolic compounds analyzed in this study. It is possible that these residues interact with other secondary metabolites in medicinal plants, which would increase the chance of interfering with CagA's action. Therefore, medicinal plants have the potential to eliminate *H. pylori* infection due to their antimicrobial activities already proven in the literature and could

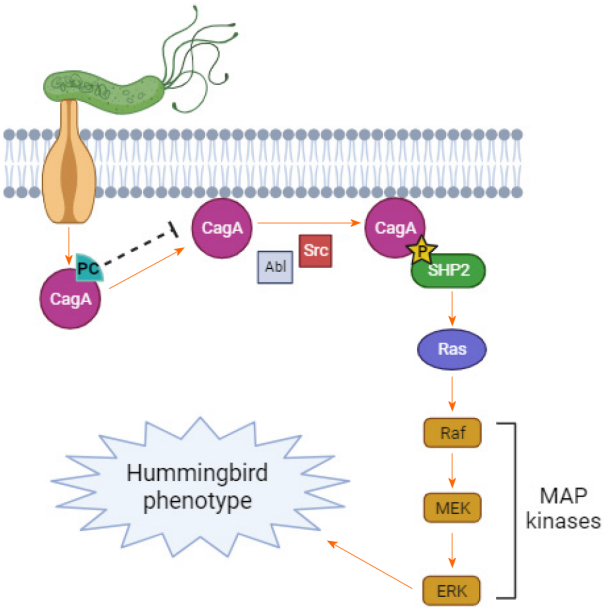


Figure 5 Proposed action of phenolic compounds on the CagA oncoprotein and the gastric epithelial cell signaling pathway. PC: Phenolic compounds.

also interfere with the action of CagA after being injected into the gastric epithelial cell. This interference could affect the cell differentiation process that culminates in the hummingbird phenotype and, consequently, prevent and/or block the onset of gastric cancer. It is important to emphasize that this is a computational study and, therefore, has limitations; thus, the data obtained must be analyzed *in vitro* and *in vivo* to validate the findings.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Peiter GC performed the *in silico* experiments and analysis; Vieira RV and Teixeira KN interpreted the data and wrote the manuscript; Zarpelon-Schutz AC, de Melo FF and Teixeira KN performed the critical analysis of the results and coordinated the study; all authors approved the final version of the manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: Institutional review board declares awareness of the study and states that neither humans nor animals were involved in the research.

Conflict-of-interest statement: We have no financial relationships to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Country of origin: Brazil

ORCID number: Rafaela Viana Vieira 0000-0002-2725-9886; Gabrielle Caroline Peiter 0000-0001-7965-4434; Fabrício Freire de Melo 0000-0002-5680-2753; Ana Carla Zarpelon-Schutz 0000-0002-8320-3633; Kádima Nayara Teixeira 0000-0002-2928-9181.

S-Editor: Qu XL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Kamboj AK**, Cotter TG, Oxentenko AS. Helicobacter pylori: The Past, Present, and Future in Management. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2017; **92**: 599-604 [PMID: 28209367 DOI: 10.1016/j.mayocp.2016.11.017]
2 **Fera MT**, Giannone M, Pallio S, Tortora A, Blandino G, Carbone M. Antimicrobial activity and postantibiotic effect of flurithromycin against Helicobacter pylori strains. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2001; **17**: 151-154 [PMID: 11165121 DOI: 10.1016/s0924-8579(00)00315-0]

3 **Boyanova L**. Comparative evaluation of two methods for testing metronidazole susceptibility of Helicobacter pylori in routine practice. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 1999; **35**: 33-36 [PMID: 10529879 DOI: 10.1016/s0732-8893(99)00039-5]

4 **Park JB**, Imamura L, Kobashi K. Kinetic studies of Helicobacter pylori urease inhibition by a novel proton pump inhibitor, rabeprazole. *Biol Pharm Bull* 1996; **19**: 182-187 [PMID: 8850302 DOI: 10.1248/bpb.19.182]

5 **Midolo PD**, Norton A, von Itzstein M, Lambert JR. Novel bismuth compounds have in vitro activity against Helicobacter pylori. *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 1997; **157**: 229-232 [PMID: 9435101 DOI: 10.1111/j.1574-6968.1997.tb12777.x]

6 **Sorba G**, Bertinaria M, Di Stilo A, Gasco A, Scaltrito MM, Brenciaglia MI, Dubini F. Anti-Helicobacter pylori agents endowed with H2-antagonist properties. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2001; **11**: 403-406 [PMID: 11212121 DOI: 10.1016/s0960-894x(00)00671-5]

7 **Lamont JT**. Treatment regimens for Helicobacter pylori in adults. [cited May 20, 2023]. Available from: https://www.uptodate.com/contents/treatment-regimens-for-helicobacter-pylori-in-adults?search=Helicobacter%20pylori&source=search_result&selectedTitle=1~150&usage_type=default&display_rank=1#H2609998802

8 **Savoldi A**, Carrara E, Graham DY, Conti M, Tacconelli E. Prevalence of Antibiotic Resistance in Helicobacter pylori: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis in World Health Organization Regions. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 1372-1382.e17 [PMID: 29990487 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.07.007]

9 **Sathianarayanan S**, Ammanath AV, Biswas R, B A, Sukumaran S, Venkidasamy B. A new approach against Helicobacter pylori using plants and its constituents: A review study. *Microb Pathog* 2022; **168**: 105594 [PMID: 35605740 DOI: 10.1016/j.micpath.2022.105594]

10 **Dinat S**, Orchard A, Van Vuuren S. A scoping review of African natural products against gastric ulcers and Helicobacter pylori. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2023; **301**: 115698 [PMID: 36174808 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2022.115698]

11 **Wang YC**. Medicinal plant activity on Helicobacter pylori related diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 10368-10382 [PMID: 25132753 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i30.10368]

12 **Chen AY**, Chen YC. A review of the dietary flavonoid, kaempferol on human health and cancer chemoprevention. *Food Chem* 2013; **138**: 2099-2107 [PMID: 23497863 DOI: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2012.11.139]

13 **Singh RP**, Agarwal R. Flavonoid antioxidant silymarin and skin cancer. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2002; **4**: 655-663 [PMID: 12230878 DOI: 10.1089/15230860260220166]

14 **Brownson DM**, Azios NG, Fuqua BK, Dharmawardhane SF, Mabry TJ. Flavonoid effects relevant to cancer. *J Nutr* 2002; **132**: 3482S-3489S [PMID: 12421874 DOI: 10.1093/jn/132.11.3482S]

15 **Chan FL**, Choi HL, Chen ZY, Chan PS, Huang Y. Induction of apoptosis in prostate cancer cell lines by a flavonoid, baicalin. *Cancer Lett* 2000; **160**: 219-228 [PMID: 11053652 DOI: 10.1016/s0304-3835(00)00591-7]

16 **Kuo SM**. Dietary flavonoid and cancer prevention: evidence and potential mechanism. *Crit Rev Oncog* 1997; **8**: 47-69 [PMID: 9516086 DOI: 10.1615/critrevoncog.v8.i1.30]

17 **Crozier A**, Jaganath IB, Clifford MN. Dietary phenolics: chemistry, bioavailability and effects on health. *Nat Prod Rep* 2009; **26**: 1001-1043 [PMID: 19636448 DOI: 10.1039/b802662a]

18 **Ullah A**, Munir S, Badshah SL, Khan N, Ghani L, Poulson BG, Emwas AH, Jaremko M. Important Flavonoids and Their Role as a Therapeutic Agent. *Molecules* 2020; **25** [PMID: 33187049 DOI: 10.3390/molecules25225243]

19 **Poorolajal J**, Moradi L, Mohammadi Y, Cheraghi Z, Gohari-Ensaf F. Risk factors for stomach cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Epidemiol Health* 2020; **42**: e2020004 [PMID: 32023777 DOI: 10.4178/epih.e2020004]

20 **Oliveira AKS**, Silva LLL, Miguel MP, Blanco AJV, Carneiro LC, Barbosa MS. HELICOBACTER PYLORI cagA VIRULENCE GENE AND SEVERE ESOGASTRODUODENAL DISEASES: IS THERE AN ASSOCIATION? *Arq Gastroenterol* 2021; **58**: 468-475 [PMID: 34909852 DOI: 10.1590/S0004-2803.202100000-85]

21 **Hatakeyama M**. Structure and function of Helicobacter pylori CagA, the first-identified bacterial protein involved in human cancer. *Proc Jpn Acad Ser B Phys Biol Sci* 2017; **93**: 196-219 [PMID: 28413197 DOI: 10.2183/pjab.93.013]

22 **Backert S**, Tegtmeyer N, Fischer W. Composition, structure and function of the Helicobacter pylori cag pathogenicity island encoded type IV secretion system. *Future Microbiol* 2015; **10**: 955-965 [PMID: 26059619 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.15.32]

23 **Nesić D**, Miller MC, Quinkert ZT, Stein M, Chait BT, Stebbins CE. Helicobacter pylori CagA inhibits PAR1-MARK family kinases by mimicking host substrates. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2010; **17**: 130-132 [PMID: 19966800 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.1705]

24 **Rahman MM**, Rahaman MS, Islam MR, Rahman F, Mithi FM, Alqahtani T, Almikhlafi MA, Alghamdi SQ, Alruwaili AS, Hossain MS, Ahmed M, Das R, Emran TB, Uddin MS. Role of Phenolic Compounds in Human Disease: Current Knowledge and Future Prospects. *Molecules* 2021; **27** [PMID: 35011465 DOI: 10.3390/molecules27010233]

25 **Zheng W**, Zhang C, Li Y, Pearce R, Bell EW, Zhang Y. Folding non-homologous proteins by coupling deep-learning contact maps with I-TASSER assembly simulations. *Cell Rep Methods* 2021; **1** [PMID: 34355210 DOI: 10.1016/j.crmeth.2021.100014]

26 **Williams CJ**, Headd JJ, Moriarty NW, Prisant MG, Videau LL, Deis LN, Verma V, Keedy DA, Hintze BJ, Chen VB, Jain S, Lewis SM, Arendall WB 3rd, Snoeyink J, Adams PD, Lovell SC, Richardson JS, Richardson DC. MolProbity: More and better reference data for improved all-atom structure validation. *Protein Sci* 2018; **27**: 293-315 [PMID: 29067766 DOI: 10.1002/pro.3330]

27 **Santana CA**, Silveira SA, Moraes JPA, Izidoro SC, de Melo-Minardi RC, Ribeiro AJM, Tyzack JD, Borkakoti N, Thornton JM. GRaSP: a graph-based residue neighborhood strategy to predict binding sites. *Bioinformatics* 2020; **36**: i726-i734 [PMID: 33381849 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/btaa805]

28 **Vieira MN**, Winterhalter P, Jerz G. Flavonoids from the flowers of Impatiens glandulifera Royle isolated by high performance countercurrent chromatography. *Phytochem Anal* 2016; **27**: 116-125 [PMID: 26751603 DOI: 10.1002/pca.2606]

29 **Gutiérrez-Rebolledo GA**, Garduño-Siciliano L, García-Rodríguez RV, Pérez-González MZ, Chávez MI, Bah M, Siordia-Reyes GA, Chamorro-Cevallos GA, Jiménez-Arellanes MA. Anti-inflammatory and toxicological evaluation of Moussonia deppeana (Schldl. & Cham) Hanst and Verbascoside as a main active metabolite. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2016; **187**: 269-280 [PMID: 27125592 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2016.04.033]

30 **Morris GM**, Huey R, Lindstrom W, Sanner MF, Belew RK, Goodsell DS, Olson AJ. AutoDock4 and AutoDockTools4: Automated docking with selective receptor flexibility. *J Comput Chem* 2009; **30**: 2785-2791 [PMID: 19399780 DOI: 10.1002/jcc.21256]

31 **Lengauer T**, Rarey M. Computational methods for biomolecular docking. *Curr Opin Struct Biol* 1996; **6**: 402-406 [PMID: 8804827 DOI: 10.1016/s0959-440x(96)80061-3]

32 **Eberhardt J**, Santos-Martins D, Tillack AF, Forli S. AutoDock Vina 1.2.0: New Docking Methods, Expanded Force Field, and Python Bindings. *J Chem Inf Model* 2021; **61**: 3891-3898 [PMID: 34278794 DOI: 10.1021/acs.jcim.1c00203]

33 **Pantsar T**, Poso A. Binding Affinity *via* Docking: Fact and Fiction. *Molecules* 2018; **23** [PMID: 30061498 DOI: 10.3390/molecules23081899]

34 **Wilkins MR**, Gasteiger E, Bairoch A, Sanchez JC, Williams KL, Appel RD, Hochstrasser DF. Protein identification and analysis tools in the ExPASy server. *Methods Mol Biol* 1999; **112**: 531-552 [PMID: 10027275 DOI: 10.1385/1-59259-584-7:531]

35 **Blaser MJ**, Perez-Perez GI, Kleanthous H, Cover TL, Peek RM, Chyou PH, Stemmermann GN, Nomura A. Infection with Helicobacter pylori strains possessing cagA is associated with an increased risk of developing adenocarcinoma of the stomach. *Cancer Res* 1995; **55**: 2111-2115 [PMID: 7743510]

36 **Saito A**, Alvi S, Valant C, Christopoulos A, Carbone SE, Poole DP. Therapeutic potential of allosteric modulators for the treatment of gastrointestinal motility disorders. *Br J Pharmacol* 2022 [PMID: 36565295 DOI: 10.1111/bph.16023]

37 **Paduch R**, Kandefer-Szerszeń M, Trytek M, Fiedurek J. Terpenes: substances useful in human healthcare. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz)* 2007; **55**: 315-327 [PMID: 18219762 DOI: 10.1007/s00005-007-0039-1]

38 **Meoti FC**. Análise dos mecanismos de ação antinociceptiva e antinflamatória do flavonóide miricetina: estudos in vivo e in vitro. UFSM 2006. Available from: https://repositorio.ufsm.br/handle/1/4391

39 **Murota K**, Terao J. Antioxidative flavonoid quercetin: implication of its intestinal absorption and metabolism. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2003; **417**: 12-17 [PMID: 12921774 DOI: 10.1016/s0003-9861(03)00284-4]

40 **Castillo-Juárez I**, González V, Jaime-Aguilar H, Martínez G, Linares E, Bye R, Romero I. Anti-Helicobacter pylori activity of plants used in Mexican traditional medicine for gastrointestinal disorders. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2009; **122**: 402-405 [PMID: 19162157 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2008.12.021]

41 **Szewczyk K**, Zidorn C, Biernasiuk A, Komsta Ł, Granica S. Polyphenols from Impatiens (Balsaminaceae) and their antioxidant and antimicrobial activities. *Ind Crops Prod* 2016; **86**: 262-272 [DOI: 10.1016/j.indcrop.2016.03.053]

42 **Youssef FS**, Altyar AE, Omar AM, Ashour ML. Phytoconstituents, In Vitro Anti-Infective Activity of Buddleja indica Lam., and In Silico Evaluation of its SARS-CoV-2 Inhibitory Potential. *Front Pharmacol* 2021; **12**: 619373 [PMID: 33912041 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2021.619373]

43 **Elhady SS**, Youssef FS, Alahdal AM, Almasri DM, Ashour ML. Anti-Hyperglycaemic Evaluation of Buddleia indica Leaves Using In Vitro, In Vivo and In Silico Studies and Its Correlation with the Major Phytoconstituents. *Plants (Basel)* 2021; **10** [PMID: 34834714 DOI: 10.3390/plants10112351]

44 **Jang HG**, Heo BG, Park YS, Namiesnik J, Barasch D, Katrich E, Vearasilp K, Trakhtenberg S, Gorinstein S. Chemical composition, antioxidant and anticancer effects of the seeds and leaves of indigo (Polygonum tinctorium Ait.) plant. *Appl Biochem Biotechnol* 2012; **167**: 1986-2004 [PMID: 22644642 DOI: 10.1007/s12010-012-9723-7]

45 **Kataoka M**, Hirata K, Kunikata T, Ushio S, Iwaki K, Ohashi K, Ikeda M, Kurimoto M. Antibacterial action of tryptanthrin and kaempferol, isolated from the indigo plant (Polygonum tinctorium Lour.), against Helicobacter pylori-infected Mongolian gerbils. *J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36**: 5-9 [PMID: 11211212 DOI: 10.1007/s005350170147]

46 **da Silva LP**, Pereira E, Pires TCSP, Alves MJ, Pereira OR, Barros L, Ferreira ICFR. Rubus ulmifolius Schott fruits: A detailed study of its nutritional, chemical and bioactive properties. *Food Res Int* 2019; **119**: 34-43 [PMID: 30884664 DOI: 10.1016/j.foodres.2019.01.052]

47 **Martini S**, D'Addario C, Colacevich A, Focardi S, Borghini F, Santucci A, Figura N, Rossi C. Antimicrobial activity against Helicobacter pylori strains and antioxidant properties of blackberry leaves (Rubus ulmifolius) and isolated compounds. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2009; **34**: 50-59 [PMID: 19386474 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2009.01.010]

48 **Bae EA**, Han MJ, Kim DH. In vitro anti-Helicobacter pylori activity of some flavonoids and their metabolites. *Planta Med* 1999; **65**: 442-443 [PMID: 10454900 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-960805]

49 **Kim MJ**, Kim BG, Ahn JH. Biosynthesis of bioactive O-methylated flavonoids in Escherichia coli. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol* 2013; **97**: 7195-7204 [PMID: 23771780 DOI: 10.1007/s00253-013-5020-9]

50 **Kang GD**, Kim DH. Ponciretin attenuates ethanol-induced gastric damage in mice by inhibiting inflammatory responses. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2017; **43**: 179-186 [PMID: 28013186 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2016.12.021]

51 **Eftekhari M**, Shams Ardekani MR, Amin M, Mansourian M, Saeedi M, Akbarzadeh T, Khanavi M. Anti-Helicobacter pylori Compounds from Oliveria decumbens Vent. through Urease Inhibitory In-vitro and In-silico Studies. *Iran J Pharm Res* 2021; **20**: 476-489 [PMID: 34904002 DOI: 10.22037/ijpr.2021.114485.14876]

52 **Tran Trung H**, Truong Thi Huynh H, Nguyen Thi Thuy L, Nguyen Van Minh H, Thi Nguyen MN, Luong Thi MN. Growth-Inhibiting, Bactericidal, Antibiofilm, and Urease Inhibitory Activities of Hibiscus rosa sinensis L. Flower Constituents toward Antibiotic Sensitive- and Resistant-Strains of Helicobacter pylori. *ACS Omega* 2020; **5**: 20080-20089 [PMID: 32832762 DOI: 10.1021/acsomega.0c01640]

53 **Mejía JJ**, Sierra LJ, Ceballos JG, Martínez JR, Stashenko EE. Color, Antioxidant Capacity and Flavonoid Composition in Hibiscus rosa-sinensis Cultivars. *Molecules* 2023; **28** [PMID: 36838766 DOI: 10.3390/molecules28041779]

54 **Stein M**, Rappuoli R, Covacci A. The *cag* Pathogenicity Island. In: *Helicobacter pylori*: Physiology and Genetics. 2001- [PMID: 21290735]

55 **Verli H**. Bioinformática: da biologia à flexibilidade molecular. 2014; 1-12 Available from: https://lume.ufrgs.br/bitstream/handle/10183/166105/001012172.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

56 **González A**, Salillas S, Velázquez-Campoy A, Espinosa Angarica V, Fillat MF, Sancho J, Lanas Á. Identifying potential novel drugs against Helicobacter pylori by targeting the essential response regulator HsrA. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 11294 [PMID: 31383920 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-47746-9]

57 **Tegtmeyer N**, Backert S. Role of Abl and Src family kinases in actin-cytoskeletal rearrangements induced by the Helicobacter pylori CagA protein. *Eur J Cell Biol* 2011; **90**: 880-890 [PMID: 21247656 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejcb.2010.11.006]

58 **Bessède E**, Mégraud F. Microbiota and gastric cancer. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2022; **86**: 11-17 [PMID: 35533800 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcancer.2022.05.001]

59 **Tohidpour A**. CagA-mediated pathogenesis of Helicobacter pylori. *Microb Pathog* 2016; **93**: 44-55 [PMID: 26796299 DOI: 10.1016/j.micpath.2016.01.005]

60 **Fidler R**, Sokolov AV, Verbitskiĭ MSh, Papazov IP. [Monoclonal antibodies against the beta subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin]. *Biull Eksp Biol Med* 1988; **106**: 693-695 [PMID: 2462933 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2014.02.008]

61 **Chang CC**, Kuo WS, Chen YC, Perng CL, Lin HJ, Ou YH. Fragmentation of CagA Reduces Hummingbird Phenotype Induction by Helicobactor pylori. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0150061 [PMID: 26934189 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0150061]

62 **Nelson DL**. Princípios de bioquímica de Lehninger. 6ed. 2014; 115-151

World Journal of Clinical Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Clin Oncol 2024 May 24; 15(5): 664-666

DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.664

ISSN 2218-4333 (online)

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

Integrating disulfidptosis-related long noncoding RNAs in colorectal cancer prognosis: A path to precision medicine

Shi-Yan Zhang

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's classification

Scientific Quality: Grade C
Novelty: Grade C
Creativity or Innovation: Grade C
Scientific Significance: Grade C

P-Reviewer: Nagaya M, Japan

Received: February 2, 2024
Revised: March 5, 2024
Accepted: April 9, 2024
Published online: May 24, 2024

Shi-Yan Zhang, Department of Clinical Laboratory, Fuding Hospital, Fujian University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Fuding 355200, Fujian Province, China

Corresponding author: Shi-Yan Zhang, MD, Director, Doctor, Department of Clinical Laboratory, Fuding Hospital, Fujian University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, No. 120 South Road of Old City, Fuding 355200, Fujian Province, China. myebox@139.com

Abstract

This commentary explores the burgeoning field of disulfidptosis-related long noncoding RNAs (lncRNAs) in the prognosis and therapeutic targeting of colorectal cancer (CRC). By evaluating recent research, including the pivotal study "Predicting colorectal cancer prognosis based on long noncoding RNAs of disulfidptosis genes" by Wang *et al*, this analysis underscores the critical role of lncRNAs in deciphering the molecular complexities of CRC. Highlighting the innovative methodologies and significant findings, I discuss the implications for patient survival, therapeutic response, and the potential of lncRNAs as biomarkers for precision medicine. The integration of bioinformatics, clinical databases, and molecular biology in these studies offers a promising avenue for advancing CRC treatment strategies and improving patient outcomes.

Key Words: Colorectal cancer; Disulfidptosis; Long noncoding RNAs; Prognosis; Precision medicine

Core Tip: This commentary emphasizes the novel role of disulfidptosis-related long noncoding RNAs (lncRNAs) in colorectal cancer prognosis. Focusing on the intersection of genetic research and clinical practice, it highlights how the study of lncRNAs can facilitate the development of targeted therapies and prognostic models. The critical evaluation of recent research underscores the potential of lncRNAs as biomarkers and therapeutic targets, marking a significant step towards personalized medicine in colorectal cancer treatment.

Citation: Zhang SY. Integrating disulfidptosis-related long noncoding RNAs in colorectal cancer prognosis: A path to precision medicine. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; 15(5): 664-666
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/2218-4333/full/v15/i5/664.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.5306/wjco.v15.i5.664

TO THE EDITOR

I recently read the insightful study titled "Predicting colorectal cancer prognosis based on long noncoding RNAs of disulfidptosis genes" by Wang *et al*[1] published in *World Journal of Clinical Oncology*. The study pioneers the exploration into the prognostic value of disulfidptosis-related lncRNAs (DRLs) in colorectal cancer (CRC). Through meticulous analysis and innovative approaches, the research uncovers eight significant lncRNAs associated with disulfidptosis, shedding light on their potential as prognostic markers and therapeutic targets.

Key methodologies like leveraging The Cancer Genome Atlas for data collection and the development of a prognostic model through bioinformatics techniques, showcasing the integration of clinical and genetic data for precision medicine. The findings suggest a profound connection between lncRNAs, immune response, and CRC prognosis, offering a novel perspective on cancer treatment strategies. Furthermore, drug sensitivity analysis indicated that Epirubicin, bortezomib, teniposide, and BMS-754807 exhibit the least sensitivity among the assessed immunotherapy drugs, underscoring the necessity for customized therapeutic approaches to augment cancer treatment efficacy.

The relevance of this study is further underscored by related literature, such as the validation of lncRNA prognostic models in CRC, the prognostic significance of disulfidptosis-associated lncRNA signatures, and their implications for the tumor microenvironment and therapeutic options[2-4]. These complementary studies highlight the potential of lncRNAs in understanding CRC's molecular mechanisms and in developing targeted therapies.

The study's findings are pivotal, offering a novel perspective on CRC treatment strategies through DRL utilization. This advancement could revolutionize precision medicine by enabling more personalized and effective treatments. Future research is essential to understand DRLs' impact on CRC progression and treatment response, and their viability as therapeutic targets, potentially leading to innovative treatments that significantly improve patient outcomes[5]. Validating the functions of disulfidptosis-related lncRNAs and immune checkpoints' anti-cancer mechanisms through comprehensive animal and cell studies is imperative.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zhang SY wrote and edited the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The author reports no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Shi-Yan Zhang 0000-0003-4305-8213.

S-Editor: Gong ZM
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhao YQ

REFERENCES

1 **Wang KL**, Chen KD, Tang WW, Chen ZP, Wang YJ, Shi GP, Chen YG. Predicting colorectal cancer prognosis based on long noncoding RNAs of disulfidptosis genes. *World J Clin Oncol* 2024; **15**: 89-114 [PMID: 38292658 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v15.i1.89]
2 **Wu Y**, Xu X. Long non-coding RNA signature in colorectal cancer: research progression and clinical application. *Cancer Cell Int* 2023; **23**: 28 [PMID: 36797749 DOI: 10.1186/s12935-023-02867-0]
3 **Xiao L**, Yin W, Chen X, Zhang X, Zhang C, Yu Z, Lü M. A disulfidptosis-related lncRNA index predicting prognosis and the tumor microenvironment in colorectal cancer. *Sci Rep* 2023; **13**: 20135 [PMID: 37978247 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-023-47472-3]
4 **Xue W**, Qiu K, Dong B, Guo D, Fu J, Zhu C, Niu Z. Disulfidptosis-associated long non-coding RNA signature predicts the prognosis, tumor microenvironment, and immunotherapy and chemotherapy options in colon adenocarcinoma. *Cancer Cell Int* 2023; **23**: 218 [PMID: 37759294 DOI: 10.1186/s12935-023-03065-8]
5 **Chi H**, Huang J, Yan Y, Jiang C, Zhang S, Chen H, Jiang L, Zhang J, Zhang Q, Yang G, Tian G. Unraveling the role of disulfidptosis-related

LncRNAs in colon cancer: a prognostic indicator for immunotherapy response, chemotherapy sensitivity, and insights into cell death mechanisms. *Front Mol Biosci* 2023; **10**: 1254232 [PMID: 37916187 DOI: 10.3389/fmolb.2023.1254232]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: office@baishideng.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com